



Range Rover Evoque

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 60 141

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Land Rover internet site at: www.ownerinfo.landrover.com.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK



Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.



Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.

All rights reserved.

Contents

Introduction.....	2	Cruise control.....	105
Entering the vehicle.....	5	Adaptive cruise control.....	106
Exiting the vehicle.....	13	Terrain response.....	113
Front seats.....	17	Hill descent control (HDC).....	115
Rear seats.....	22	Wade sensing.....	118
Head restraints.....	23	Driving aids.....	120
Steering wheel.....	25	Cameras.....	123
Seat belts.....	26	Audio/video overview.....	125
Child safety.....	30	Radio.....	131
Airbags.....	36	DAB radio.....	133
Instrument panel.....	40	Portable media.....	136
Warning lamps.....	43	Television.....	142
Exterior lights.....	48	Video media player.....	144
Interior lights.....	51	Dual view.....	146
Wipers and washers.....	53	Rear media.....	148
Mirrors.....	57	Voice control.....	152
Blind spot monitoring.....	59	Telephone.....	154
Garage door opener.....	62	Navigation system.....	159
Windows.....	65	Standard audio system overview..	174
Touch screen.....	67	Standard audio system.....	176
Heating and ventilation.....	70	Fuel and refuelling.....	187
Storage compartments.....	75	Maintenance.....	192
Load carrying.....	77	Vehicle cleaning.....	205
Towing.....	79	Fluid level checks.....	209
Starting the engine.....	83	Vehicle battery.....	215
Intelligent stop/start.....	85	Fuses.....	220
Eco-data.....	86	Tyres.....	229
Gearbox.....	87	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	237
Stability control.....	90	Tyre repair kit.....	239
Traction control.....	91	Wheel changing.....	243
Suspension.....	92	Vehicle recovery.....	247
Brakes.....	93	After a collision.....	249
Parking aids.....	96	Vehicle labels.....	250
Park assist.....	101		

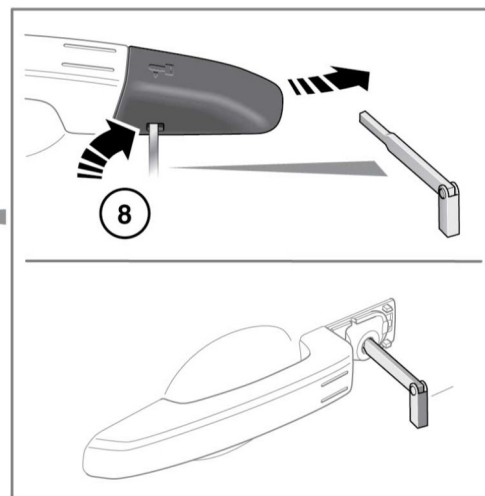
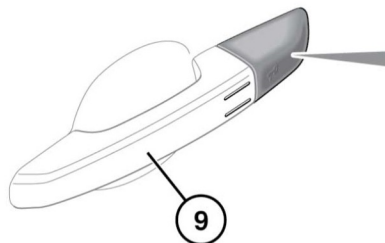
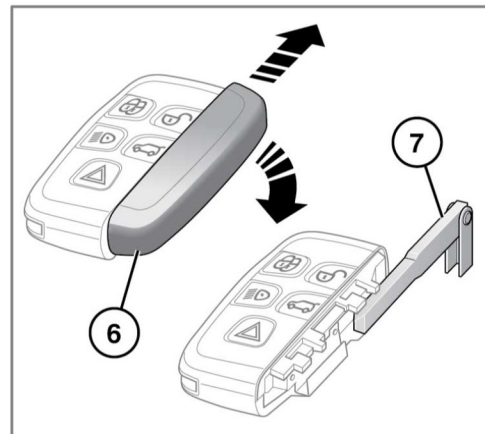
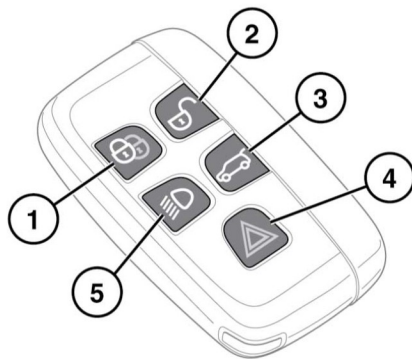
L

Contents

Technical specifications	252
Type approval	260
Controls overview	298

Entering the vehicle

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



E155818



To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Note: The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: If any door or the tailgate is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the latch is disabled for approximately 1 minute.

Entering the vehicle

The vehicle is supplied with 2 Smart keys. The Smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system and allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked and driven without the use of a conventional key. See **8, KEYLESS ENTRY, 15, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **83, STARTING THE ENGINE**. Each Smart key also has an emergency key housed in a slide out compartment.

1. Lock:

- Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See **13, SINGLE LOCKING**. See **13, DOUBLE LOCKING**.
See also **14, GLOBAL CLOSING**.

2. Unlock:

- Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and deactivate the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been deactivated. The interior lamps and puddle lamps will illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle.
Power-fold mirrors will unfold (if enabled). See **7, GLOBAL OPENING**.

3. Tailgate release:

- Press briefly to open the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system will remain active while the tailgate is open, but intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be disabled.

When closing the tailgate again, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash after a few seconds to confirm that the full alarm system has been reactivated. There will also be an audible sound if the vehicle was double locked. See **9, OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE**. See also **10, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.



Make sure the Smart key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference or the Smart key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.

4. Panic alarm:

- Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press 3 times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lamps.
- Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for 3 seconds (or pressing 3 times within 3 seconds).
- The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if a valid Smart key is present when the START/STOP button is pressed.

Entering the vehicle

5. Approach illumination:

- When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to turn the approach lamps off.
- The approach illumination period set at the factory is 30 seconds. This delay period may be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: In some markets a second press of the button will turn on the headlamps and reversing lamps. A third press will be required to turn the lamps off.

6. Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.

7. Remove the emergency key blade and unfold.

8. If the Smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the door lock cover. The door lock cover is marked with a key symbol. To release the cover, gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully twist the key blade, to lever the cover off the retaining clips. Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm will sound. To disarm the alarm, see **84, KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

Note: When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining clips before pushing the cover into position.

Note: When the left front door is unlocked using the key blade, the alarm will sound until the Smart key is positioned correctly.

Note: A replacement Smart key can be obtained only from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The Dealer/Authorised Repairer will require proof of identification and ownership.

Notify your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately if a Smart key is lost or stolen.

9. Keyless entry/exit:

- Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

SINGLE/MULTI-POINT ENTRY

When you press the unlock button, the vehicle will unlock in 1 of 2 ways:

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door and fuel filler flap only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors, the fuel filler flap and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from Single to Multi-point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change.

This feature may also be set via the settings menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: If, when the vehicle is unlocked, an audible warning is emitted, this will be a mislock error. There may be a fault with either of the alarm sensors. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the Smart key unlock button for 3 seconds to unlock the vehicle and open all the windows.

Press any button on the Smart key to cancel the operation.

Entering the vehicle

Note: Global opening can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** Instrument panel menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

KEYLESS ENTRY

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a Smart key is within 1.0 m (3 ft) of the door handle or the tailgate external switch.

- ❗ The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

Note: The Smart key needs only to be on the driver's person or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. It does not need to be exposed or handled.

To enter the vehicle, just pull the door handle. The alarm will be disarmed and the doors unlocked according to the current unlock/entry setting (Single or Multi-Point). The hazard warning lamps will flash twice as 'unlock' confirmation. Power-folded mirrors will fold out (if enabled).

Note: If Single point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.

SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

- ⚠ Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. See **258, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

- ❗ During vehicle recovery, a Smart key must remain inside the vehicle, so that the steering column remains unlocked. See **247, RECOVERY METHOD**.




Your vehicle is fitted with an electronic steering column lock, which locks and unlocks in conjunction with the vehicle locking system. It also locks automatically, after a time delay, if the ignition is switched off and the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.

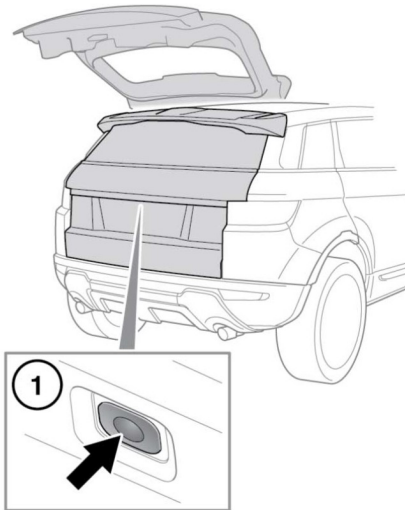
Any malfunction of the steering column lock will be indicated by the message **Steering Column Locked** being displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Entering the vehicle

OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

-  While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.
-  Make sure there is a minimum space of 1 m (3 ft) above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.
-  Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



E155824

1. Tailgate release: Lift the tailgate to open.

Note: The tailgate external release switch will operate if all doors are unlocked and the automatic transmission gear selector is in the Park (P) position. If the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position, the switch will only operate if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in Convenience mode or switched off. The switch will not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button. See **298, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The Smart key tailgate release button. See **5, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

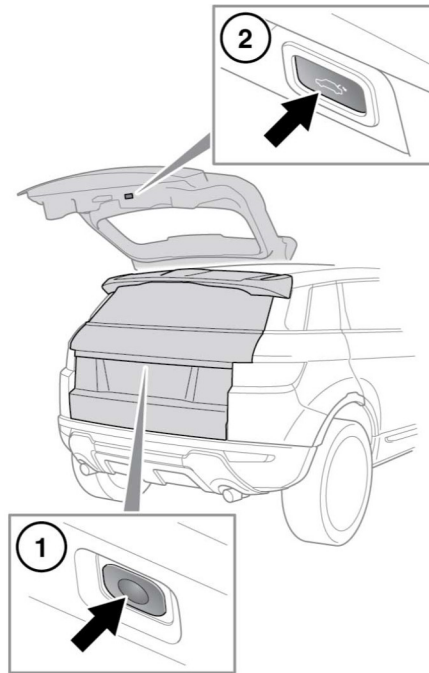
Note: The tailgate will not open if the vehicle is travelling at or above approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Entering the vehicle

Note: If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and the alarm set, an audible warning will sound to indicate a mislock and the tailgate will re-open after approximately 3 seconds. The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console etc.

Note: Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. The visible and audible warnings will indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE



1. Press to open the powered tailgate.
2. Press to close the powered tailgate.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually then press the tailgate release button again.

As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it will 'soft close' to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm that the vehicle has locked and rearmed to the previous locked and armed state. An audible warning may also sound as confirmation.

Entering the vehicle

Note: If a tailgate button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement will stop. However, if a button is pressed during the 'soft close' stage, the open request will be ignored.



Before operating the tailgate, make sure anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the 'soft close' action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement will stop. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement will stop and then reverse to the fully open position. An audible warning will be given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate close button again to close.

TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required. This is useful in parking areas with low ceiling heights or just for ease of use.

1. Open the tailgate to the position which you want to set as the maximum height. Press any tailgate control to stop movement at the required position. Final position can be achieved manually if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close switch for 10 seconds to set the maximum opening height.

4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the programmed height.

Note: If, after performing part 3 of the process the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process making sure that all steps are adhered to.

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current programmed height, manually move it to the fully open position before pressing and holding the button.

The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a release switch.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close switch.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully. The tailgate programmed memory will now be restored.

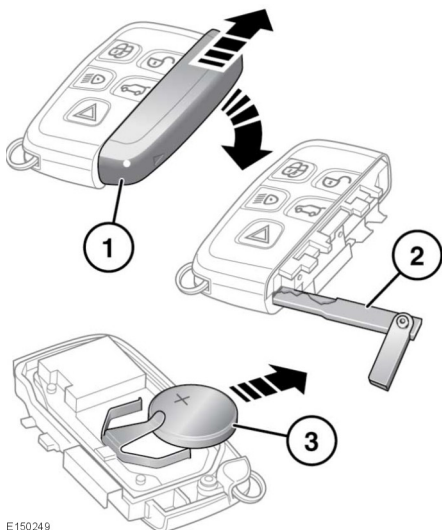
DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all doors at a set speed when the vehicle is in motion. This feature can be enabled/disabled via **Drive-away locking** in the **Vehicle set-up** menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** will be displayed in the Message centre.

Entering the vehicle



E150249

To replace the battery:

1. Remove the cover by sliding in the directions of the arrows.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart key body.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery (available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer) with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

Note: If the low battery warning does not extinguish, this indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.

Refit the parts in reverse order, making sure that they click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

SMART KEY CARE



To prevent accidental operation, which may result in an injury, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, humidity or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and attach it to the designated area in the Service Record & Warranty Benefits, supplied in the literature pack. Keep this safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the Smart key may be used by other devices (e.g. medical equipment). This may prevent the Smart key from operating correctly.

Exiting the vehicle

LOCKING AND ARMING THE ALARM



CAUTION: No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

There are 2 levels of security:

- Single locking: With all of the doors and the tailgate closed, press the lock button on the Smart key once, to Single lock the vehicle and activate the perimeter alarm. The alarm LED in the Instrument panel will start to flash and the hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm locking. Power-fold mirrors will fold in (if enabled).
- Double locking: A second press within 3 seconds will Double lock the vehicle and activate the full alarm system. The hazard warning lamps will flash a second time to confirm the enhanced Double lock state. An audible confirmation may also be given. The audible warning can be set/disabled via **Audible lock warning** in the **Vehicle set-up** menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.



The vehicle will not lock if a door, the tailgate or the bonnet aperture is open, or the ignition is ON. No lamps will flash and if the lock request is via the Smart key, there will be an audible mislock warning.



Make sure the Smart key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised RF interference or the Smart key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.



Remove any additional Smart keys from the vehicle before locking.

Note: The fuel filler flap can be opened only when the vehicle is unlocked.

SINGLE LOCKING

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened using the interior door locks and release levers. In this state, only the perimeter (exterior) alarm is activated. When the vehicle is Single locked and the alarm is armed, the alarm will sound if the bonnet, tailgate or a door is opened.

In some markets where a battery backed sounder is fitted the following actions will also sound the alarm:

- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm siren.

Note: Single locking should be used in circumstances such as travelling on a ferry, if pets are to be left in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open.

DOUBLE LOCKING



Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors being opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside the vehicle when double locked.

This provides additional security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the interior door locks and release levers.

Additionally, Double locking also activates the full alarm system with intrusion sensing (market dependent) and tilt sensing. When the vehicle is Double locked the alarm will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door is opened.

Exiting the vehicle

- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior.
- A window, front or rear screen or panoramic sunroof glass is broken.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted.

In some markets where a battery backed sounder is fitted the following actions will also sound the alarm:

- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm siren.

Note: *In this state, an open window may cause the alarm to sound due to the movement of air currents. For this reason, make sure all of the windows are fully closed before Double locking the vehicle.*

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by Single or Double locking), press either the Smart key lock button or, if Keyless entry is fitted, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

Note: *If the vehicle is **not** already locked and armed, pressing the lock button will single lock the vehicle. Press again to double lock, if required.*

AUTOMATIC RELOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

If a door, the tailgate or the bonnet are not opened within 40 seconds of unlocking the vehicle via the Smart key, all of the doors will re-lock automatically to the previous locked state and the alarm will re-arm.

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the Smart key a mislock can occur if:

- One or more of the doors, the bonnet or the taildoor is not fully closed.
- The ignition is ON.
- A Smart key is left in the vehicle.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle will NOT lock and there will be an audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

GLOBAL CLOSING



Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating global closing.

Make sure all of the doors are closed. Press and hold the Smart key lock button for 3 seconds. The vehicle will single lock and the alarm will be armed immediately. After 3 seconds any open windows will be closed.

Keyless global closing (if enabled) can be operated by touching the door lock sensor for 3 seconds. This will also single lock the vehicle and activate the alarm.

Note: *The windows will close only while the door lock sensor is covered. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the door lock sensor until all the windows are fully closed.*

Note: *Global closing can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** Instrument panel menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.*

Exiting the vehicle

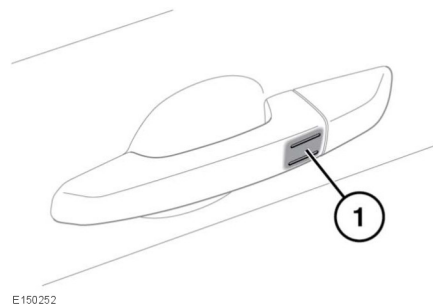
KEYLESS LOCKING



Never double lock the vehicle with people, children or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.



The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console etc.



E150252

The vehicle will not lock automatically.

Note: Keyless locking will activate only if the Smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no Smart key is present, no locking will occur.

- To single lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor on the door handle (1) once without grabbing the door handle.

Note: Do not place fingers round the back of the handle while touching the sensor, doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.

The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm locking.

- To double lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor (1) twice within 3 seconds without grabbing the door handle.

Note: Do not place fingers round the back of the handle while touching the sensor, doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm (with a long second flash). An audible confirmation may also be given (if enabled).

Note: When locking the vehicle via Keyless locking, if one or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is not fully closed, or the ignition is ON, the vehicle will NOT lock. There will be NO audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

INTERIOR PROTECTION

The interior protection feature of the full alarm system may be temporarily disabled via **Alarm sensors** in the **Vehicle set-up** menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: If the interior protection is temporarily disabled, it will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is Double locked with the Smart key.

BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

In certain markets, a battery backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound if it or the vehicle battery is disconnected while the security system is armed.

Exiting the vehicle

TILT SENSOR

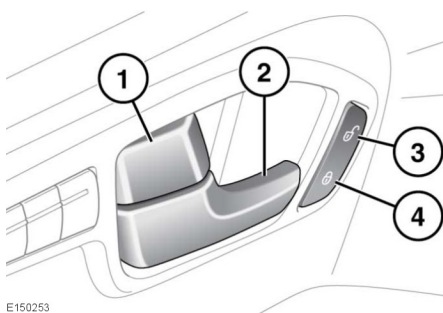
The tilt sensor detects any change to the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is double locked, any change in the vehicle's angle will activate the tilt alarm.

Note: The tilt sensors can be temporarily disabled for the next time the vehicle is locked. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The sensors will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is double locked with the Smart key.

Note: If the vehicle was locked with the Smart key, operating an interior door release lever will unlock only that door. If the door is opened the alarm will sound.

Note: If the vehicle has been Double locked, the interior door release levers will not operate. The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key.

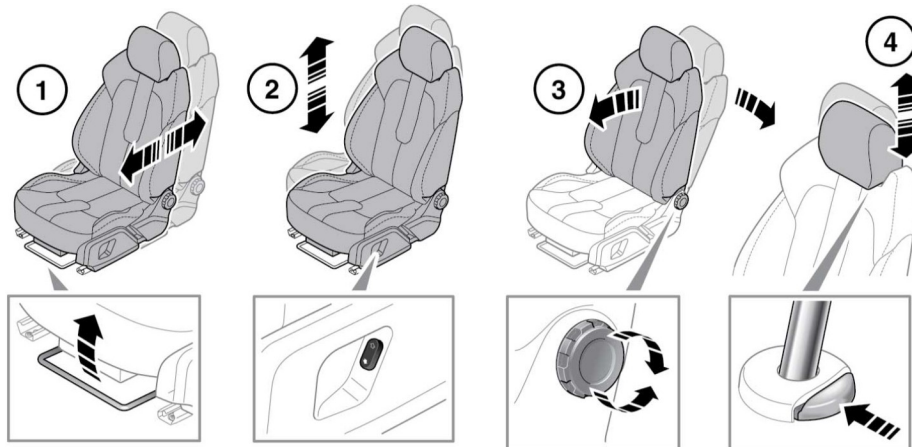
DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



1. Press a locking lever to lock a door. Pull the lever back to unlock. Operating either front door locking levers will lock or unlock all of the doors.
2. Pull a release lever to open a front door.
To unlock and open a rear door, first operate the lock lever, then pull the release lever.
3. Press the master unlock button to unlock all of the doors and the tailgate.
4. With all of the doors closed, press the master lock button to lock all of the doors and the tailgate.

Front seats

MANUAL SEATS



E150254

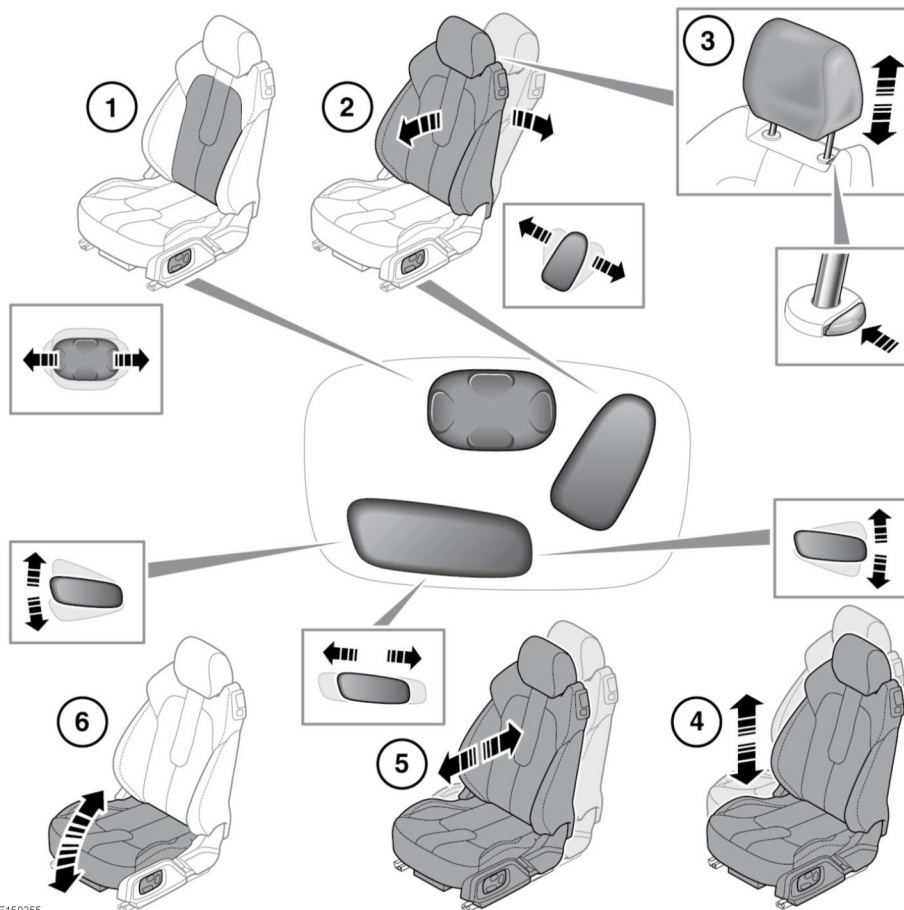
⚠ Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.
4. Head restraint adjustment (where fitted).

L

Front seats

ELECTRIC SEATS



E150255

1. Lumbar support adjustment.
2. Seatback angle adjustment.
3. Head restraint adjustment (where fitted).
4. Height adjustment.
5. Forward and rearward adjustment.
6. Cushion angle adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart key must be inside the vehicle.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL



If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for and remove any obstructions.

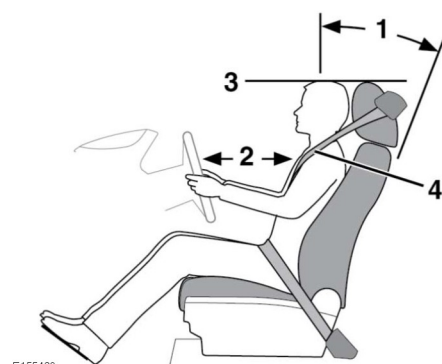
Front seats

Once any obstructions have been removed, the seat adjustment mechanism can be reset as follows:

Operate the button again to continue the stalled adjustment. When seat movement resumes, hold the button until the end of travel in that direction has been reached. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

Note: If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components will give you greater protection. Therefore, you should always observe the following points.

1. Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 250 mm (10 in) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is mid-way between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.

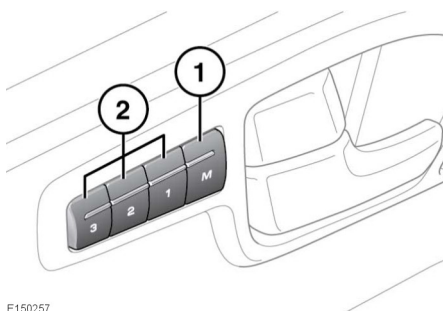
Make sure your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

The front seat positions can be saved to the vehicle's memory.

Once you have adjusted the power operated driver's seat and the exterior mirrors, the vehicle can memorise the settings for future use. See 57, EXTERIOR MIRRORS.

Front seats



1. On the driver's door, press the memory store button to activate the memory function. The switch indicator will illuminate.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. **Memory (1, 2 or 3) Settings Saved** will be displayed on the Message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been saved to memory.

Note: A seat position will be saved to memory only during the 5 second active period.

Note: Any existing settings will be over-written when a new position is saved to memory.

To recall a saved position, press the relevant preset button (2). **Memory (1, 2 or 3) Recalled** will be displayed in the Message centre.

Coupe passenger seat

Saving a seat position to memory follows the same procedure as for the driver's seat. Press the memory button to store the current seat settings.

EASY ENTRY/EXIT

When Easy entry/exit is enabled, the driver's seat will automatically lower when the ignition is switched off and the door is opened. Upon returning to the vehicle, when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is turned on, the seat will return to its previously set position.

This feature can be enabled/disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

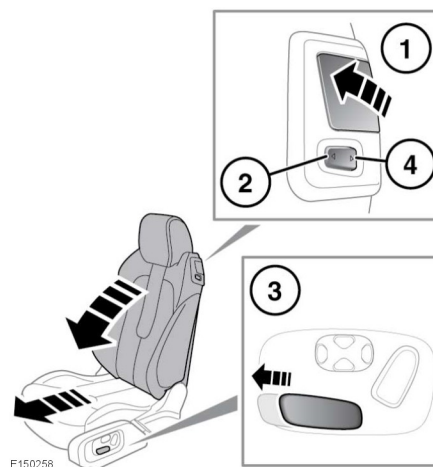
REAR SEAT ACCESS

The front seats tilt and power slide forwards for entry to and exit from the rear seats.



Take care not to damage the seatbacks while gaining access to the rear seats.

Standard seats



1. Lift the locking lever and pivot the seatback forwards.
2. Push the switch forwards or use the side mounted switch (3) to power slide the seat forwards.

Front seats

3. To return the seat, pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position. Push the switch (4) rearwards until the seat stops at its previous position.

Note: The previous position can be a memory position or an adjusted position. If the seat is required to move further back and there is still adjustment available, press and hold the switch (3 or 4) again.

Sports seats

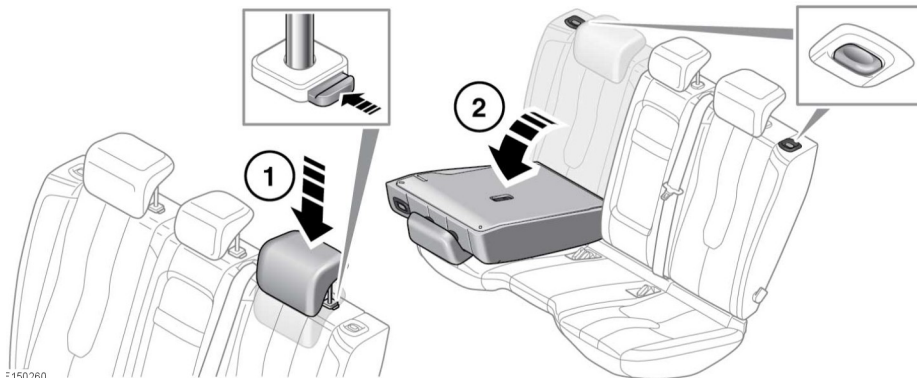


1. Lift the locking lever and pivot the seatback forwards.
2. Push the side mounted switch to power slide the seat forwards.
3. To return the seat, pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position. Push the switch rearwards until the seat stops at its previous position.

Note: Previous position can be a memory position or an adjusted position. If the seat is required to move further back and there is still adjustment available, press and hold the switch (2 or 3) again.

Rear seats

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS



The split fold rear seat of 5 door models can be folded completely, or partially at 60/40 split, to accommodate loads and still retain seating for passengers.

To fold part or all of the seat:

1. First press in the adjusting collar then fully lower the head restraints.

Note: Adjusting collar positions are dependent on the seat position. Right side position, collar at base of the right pillar. Left and centre positions, collar on the left side.

2. Press a seatback release button, then fold the appropriate seatback fully forward.

Raising a folded seat is a reversal of the folding process.

When the seatback is fully raised and locked into position, the release/locking button will pop up.

Coupe rear seat folding

If a seat fold is required, the smaller part must be folded first. The larger part can then be folded.





Raising the Coupe folded seats is a reversal of the folding process. Make sure the release/locking button relocates into the correct position.

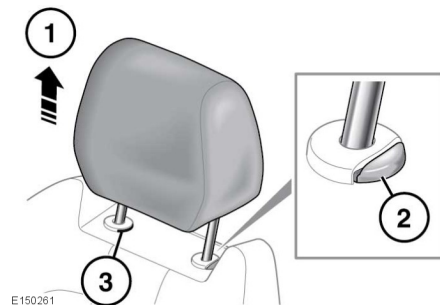


Make sure that when the seatback is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the seatbacks are not fully locked in place, red markers will be visible around the seatback release buttons.

Head restraints

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

-  **Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Do not drive, or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.**
-  **Always store a removed head restraint securely.**



1. Move the head restraint up to the required position.
2. To adjust the restraint downwards, first press in the adjusting collar.
3. To remove a manual head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. Press in the locking collar. Lift the restraint out of the seatback




Note: Head restraints fitted with Rear seat entertainment screens must NOT be removed.

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

Note: Vehicles with 'sports' front seats have integrated head restraints which are not adjustable or removable.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

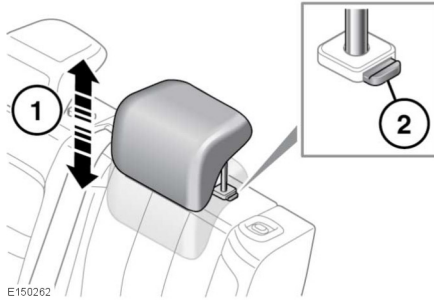
-  **Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Always store a removed restraint securely.**

Head restraints may be removed, if required (e.g. to fit larger child seats). To remove a head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. With the adjusting collar pressed in, lift the restraint out of the seatback.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

L

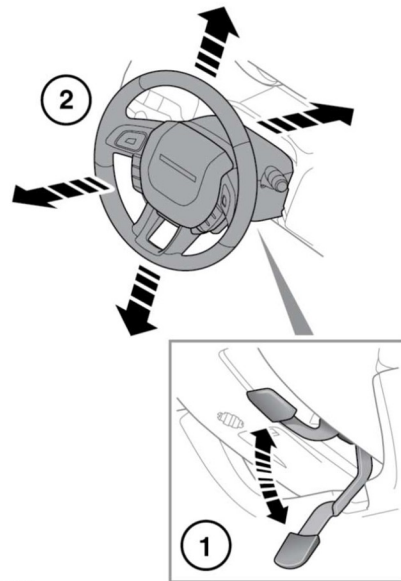
Head restraints



1. To raise, pull the restraint upwards.
2. To lower, press in the adjusting collar and push down on the restraint.

Steering wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



E155587



Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion.

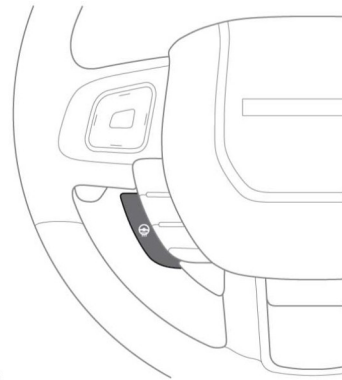
1. Move the lever fully down to unlock the column. Move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.
2. Move the steering column up, down, in or out, to the desired position.

POWER STEERING

A fault with the power steering system is indicated by a message in the Message centre, accompanied by an amber warning lamp. See **43, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**. A reduction in power steering assistance may be experienced. The fault may be caused by overheating due to extensive steering inputs or high ambient temperatures.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has been allowed to cool. If full steering assistance does not return, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL

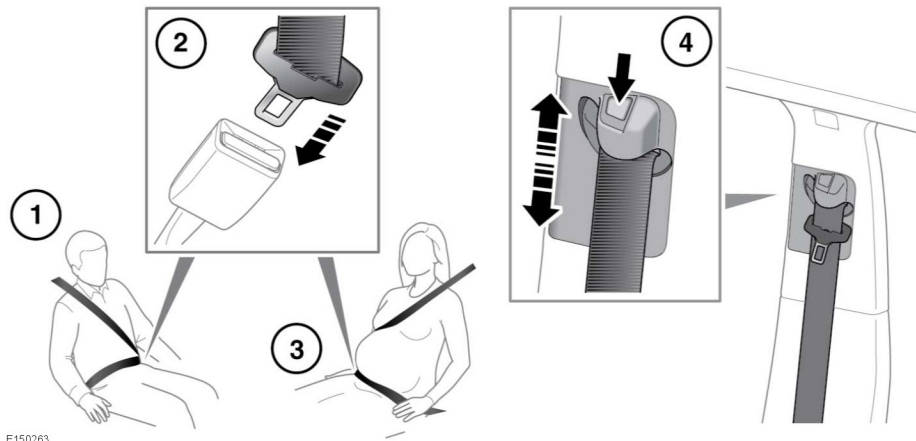


E155588




Press to switch on the steering wheel heating. Press again to turn off.

Seat belts





USING THE SEAT BELTS



- 1. Putting on a seat belt:** Draw the belt out smoothly, make sure the belt height, the seat and your position on the seat, are correct.

-  **Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.**
-  **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
-  **Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to**

the wearer.

-  **Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.**
-  **Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.**
-  **The occupants of the front seats should not travel with the seatback at more than 30 degrees from the upright position. Doing so will reduce the protection afforded by the seat belt.**
-  **Never place anything between you and the seat belt. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.**

- 2. Fastening a seat belt:** With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard.

Seat belts

To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: When releasing the seat belt it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.

3. **Seat belt use during pregnancy:** Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.



Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



Make sure the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

4. **Seat belt height adjustment:** Press to release the catch.

With the catch pressed move the mechanism slide up or down to the required height. Make sure the locking mechanism has engaged.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of your shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.



Make sure the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving.



The use of comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system, is not advised.

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.



The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be renewed. Failure to replace them will renew the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, renewed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT SAFETY









Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.



The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Seat belts

-  It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.
-  If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.
-  Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt.
-  Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey no matter how short.
-  Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.
-  When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.

- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's belt is unbuckled. Dependent on market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the Instrument panel illuminates. See **44, SEAT BELT (RED)**. The visual and audible warnings applicable to the Seat belt reminder feature are market dependent to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change depending on whether the vehicle is stationary or when the vehicle speed exceeds a pre-determined threshold. In certain markets, the Seat belt reminder feature also applies to the front passenger seat.

The Message centre also displays a front and rear seat belt reminder that warns the driver when the seat belt of any occupied seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.

Seat belts



E144213

- Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon, the colour and symbol of which indicates the seat belt status:
 - Tick - seat belt in the indicated position is fastened.
 - Cross - seat belt in the indicated position has been unfastened while the vehicle ignition is on. This indicator will turn grey after 30 seconds.
 - Grey - seat belt not fastened.

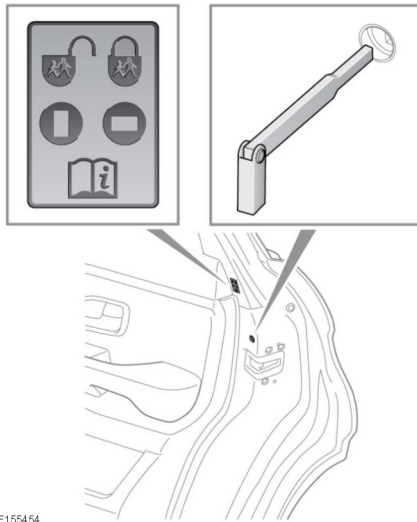
Note: The indicators will be displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened or fastened or a door is opened and then closed.

- In addition, an audible warning will sound under the following conditions:
 - The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.
 - A rear seat belt is unfastened.

Note: Objects placed on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder warning chime and indicator. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.

Child safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

To change the child lock settings:

1. Open the door to access the child safety lock.
2. Insert the key blade from the Smart key into the slot and rotate a quarter of a turn to enable or disable the interior door handle as required. The enable/disable positions are shown in the illustration.

CHILD SEATS



For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.



Do not use a forward facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of 2, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.



Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.



Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.




Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

Child safety

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.


If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this), Land Rover recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **37, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG.**
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion angle adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the fully upright position.
- Adjust the seat belt upper anchorage to its lowest position.

 **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

 **Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.**

 **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**




E150265

This symbol is fixed to the end of the fascia on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.



E145193

This symbol is fixed to the passenger side sun-visor, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

 Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

Child safety

Note: The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight not age should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

Note: The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.

Seating positions	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	I = 9-18 kg (20-40 lb) 9 months to 4 years	II = 15-25 kg (33-55 lb) 4-9 years	III = 22-36 kg (49-80 lb) 8-12 years
Front passenger*	U*	U*	U*	U*	U*
Rear outboard	U	U	U	U	U
Rear centre	U	U	U	U	U

U = Suitable for universal category restraints approved for this mass group.

* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **37, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**. The seatback needs to be adjusted to the fully upright position.

ISOFIX Child Seat Positioning

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size classes	Fixtures	Rear outboard seats
Carry-cot	F/G	ISO L1/L2	X
0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	E	ISO R1	IL *
0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	C/D/E	ISO R1/R2/R3	IL *
I = 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb) 9 months - 4 years	C/D A/B1/B	ISO R2/R3 ISO F2/F2X/F3	X IUF
II = 15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb) 4-9 years	N/A	N/A	N/A
III = 22 to 36 kg (49 to 80 lb) 8-12 years	N/A	N/A	N/A

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

Child safety

X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

* = Child seat suitable for use in these locations, is the Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus

Note: ISOFIX anchorages are provided for second row outer seating positions. ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached following the manufacturer's instructions at these locations only.

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax Kid Plus

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the restraint system manufacturer's instructions.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible renew the restraint immediately.

- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat but is still too small to safely use just the 3 point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS



Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.



If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

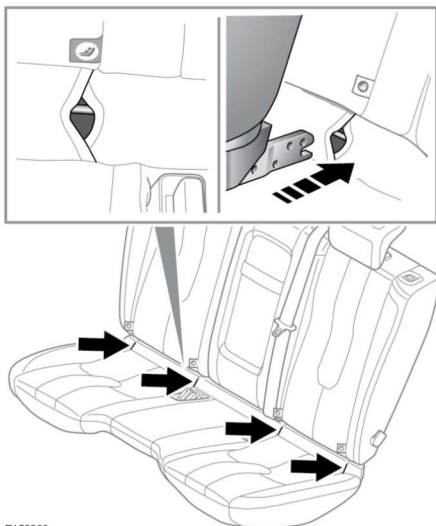
Both of the outer seat positions on the rear seat are equipped to accept ISOFIX restraints.



This symbol is shown on a label sewn into the seats to indicate the position of the ISOFIX lower anchorages.

Child safety

INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS



E150266

To install an ISOFIX child seat:-

1. Locate the ISOFIX locking mechanism.
2. Slide the child seat into the locking mechanism.
3. If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, make sure it is properly secured to the upper tether anchorages on the rear of the seats.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should still check the anchor points visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

Note: Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

TETHER ANCHORAGE POINTS



child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.



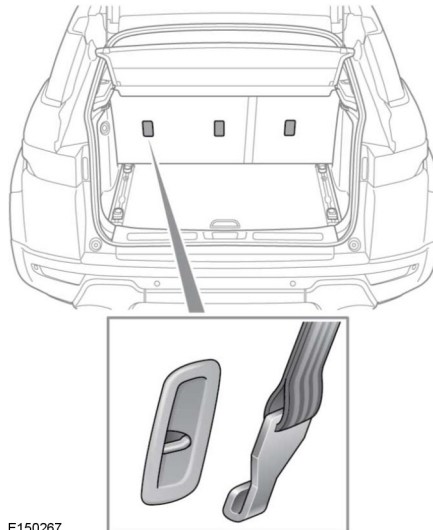
Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.



When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint.



If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).



E150267

Child safety

Your vehicle may be equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

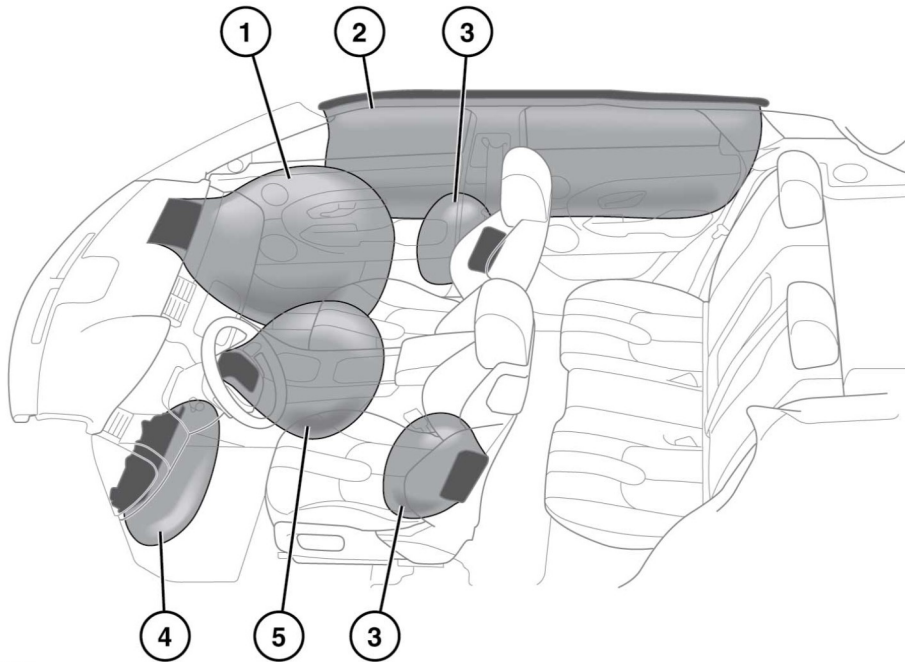
Note: A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.

INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

1. Install the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure the tether strap hook is facing the correct way.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Airbags

AIRBAGS



E150268

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Curtain airbags.
3. Side airbags.
4. Knee-bolster airbag.
5. Driver's airbag.

Note: The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.

Always contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.


- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.


AIRBAG OPERATION





For the airbags to operate correctly the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair.


Airbags

 **Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of their person, or any objects, in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. Only use approved accessories (e.g. seat covers).**

 **Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat mounted side airbags.**

 **Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.**

 **Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

 **Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of and requirements for, vehicles fitted with SRS. If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.**

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.


- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material, covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Land Rover, or specifically designed for use with seat mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to make sure the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

The airbags and Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) are not designed to operate as a result of:


- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

 **High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.**

 **The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

(Not Australia or Japan)

 **Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.**

Airbags



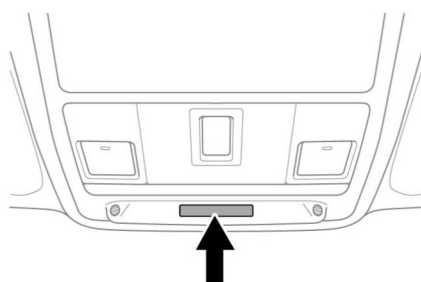
Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.



Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the SRS warning light illuminates continuously with the ignition on.

Note: The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.

Airbag disable/enable is achieved via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu on the Instrument panel. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.



E155462

An airbag status indicator lamp, mounted on the overhead control panel (as illustrated), will display the operational status of the passenger airbag.

If the airbag is disabled, the status indicator will display **PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF**. If the airbag is enabled the status indicator will display **ON PASSENGER AIRBAG** for the first 60 seconds of a journey or at a change of status.



When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, make sure the ignition is switched on and the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed.



As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags are able to deploy in 2 stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the airbags inflate fully to stage 2 giving maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full inflation may not be required, so the airbags will only inflate to stage 1. The knee bolster airbag will always fully inflate.

SIDE AIRBAGS

These are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS


The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.


AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS




When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. If breathing difficulty is experienced, leave the vehicle if possible or open the windows or doors to allow fresh air in.

Airbags


 **Airbags inflate at high speed and can cause injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure all occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats and position the seats as far back as is practicable.**

 **Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.**

 **After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.**

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The airbag warning lamp is displayed in the Instrument panel and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is turned on. See **45, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

 **If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.**

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.


- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 8 seconds of the ignition being turned on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is on.


When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.

- Airbag modules.
- Front seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

 **Do not attempt to service, repair, renew, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

 **Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

All of the following operations should be carried out only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:

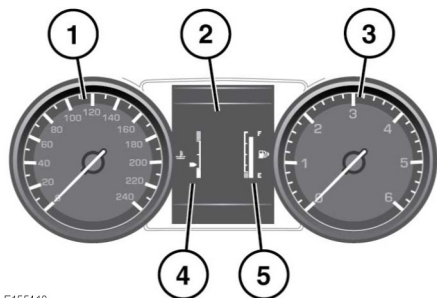
- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

Instrument panel

INSTRUMENT PANEL



E155410

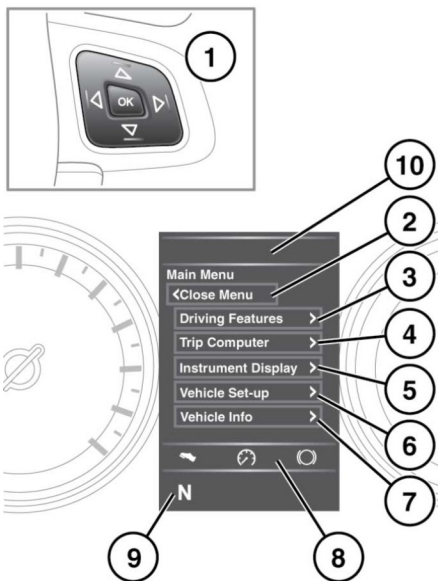
1. Speedometer.
2. Message centre.
3. Tachometer.
4. Temperature gauge: If the temperature gauge pointer moves into the red section at the top of the scale, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

⚠ Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

Note: If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the air conditioning may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with cooling.

5. Fuel gauge: See **45, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.
⚠ Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic convertor.

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU



E155411

A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the Instrument panel menu.

To display and navigate through the Instrument panel menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control.
 - Press the up/down arrows to scroll through a list. The current selection will be highlighted.
 - Press the right arrow to view a sub list.
 - Press the left arrow to return to the previous menu.
 - Press the **OK** button to select the highlighted item.
2. Select **Close Menu** to close and return to **Main Menu**.

Instrument panel

3. Select to access the **Driving Features** menu.
4. Select to access the **Trip Computer** menu.
5. Select to access the **Instrument Display** menu. The following features can be personalised:
 - The language for the Message centre display.
 - The temperature units.
 - The appearance of the Instrument panel.

Note: Some personalisation options may not be available in all markets.

6. Select to access the **Vehicle Set-up** menu.



Before making any changes to the vehicle set-up, you must make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant topics/sections of the handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

7. Select to access the vehicle **Vehicle Info**.
Note: Can be accessed only when the engine is not running.
8. ECO data system status display for the accelerator pedal, engine revolution speed and brake pedal application.
9. Gear selector status.
10. Warning lamps and indicators display.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES



Do not ignore warning messages, take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.

If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than 1 message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

Note: Messages are displayed in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel.

TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey or series of journeys until it is reset to zero.

There are 3 trip memories available, A, B and Auto. You can specify which trip memory is viewable using the Instrument panel menu.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



E150760

Instrument panel

A short press (1 second or less) or a series of short presses of the **i** button will change the trip computer display. The options available are:

- Date and Odometer.
- Trip distance.
- Trip average speed.
- Trip average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous (short term average) fuel consumption.
- Range available from remaining fuel.
- Blank display.
- ECO data system status display.

Note: *These options can be enabled/disabled via the **Trip Computer** and **Trip content** Instrument panel menus, except for the **ECO data system status display** and the **Date and Odometer options**.*

To reset the trip computer values to zero, press and hold the **i** button for 2 seconds.

To reset the fuel consumption value, press and hold the button until the display clears.

The distance, average speed and average fuel economy values for trip A and trip B can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the trip that you wish to reset, then press and hold the **i** button until the message **Resetting trip** is displayed.

It is not possible to manually reset the Auto trip memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the button for longer than 1 second, when Auto trip memory values for distance, average speed and average fuel economy are displayed, then **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** will appear on the screen. Press the button for longer than 1 second, and the previous trip information will be added to or removed from the current trip and the new total will be displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the Message centre. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *Temperature display can be changed between **°C** (Celsius) and **°F** (Fahrenheit) independently of Metric or Imperial units.*

Warning lamps

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance before continuing.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and BLUE lamps within the instrument panel indicate system status.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed on the Message centre.

Note: Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g. high beam headlamps and direction indicators).

Note: If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Message centre.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Message centre.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level if necessary. Start the engine; if the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

Warning lamps

PARKING BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates when the parking brake is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

SEAT BELT (RED)



Illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled. The lamp will extinguish when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

Note: Objects on the front passenger seat may activate seat belt reminder. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See 26, **USING THE SEAT BELTS**.

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system.

The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Flashes when DSC is active.

Warning lamps

If there is a fault, it will remain illuminated and the Message centre will display **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**. The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off. A chime will sound and a confirmation message will be displayed in the Message centre.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance urgently.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp illuminates when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates when there is a system fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)



Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



Illuminates when the ignition is switched on to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



Illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

Warning lamps

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)



The warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a message in the Message centre, to warn that 1 or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp will flash to indicate a system fault.

GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (upshift).

The shift indicator will not illuminate while Cruise control is active and not being overridden by pressing the throttle pedal.

Note: This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates continuously when HDC is selected and HDC operating conditions are met. See

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates when cruise control or Adaptive cruise control is active.

FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



Illuminates when Forward alert is active.

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the side lamps are switched on.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

Warning lamps

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

HIGH BEAM ASSIST (GREEN)



Illuminates when the auto high beam feature has switched on the high beams.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Eco Stop/Start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example the ignition warning lamp, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Eco Stop/Start system.*

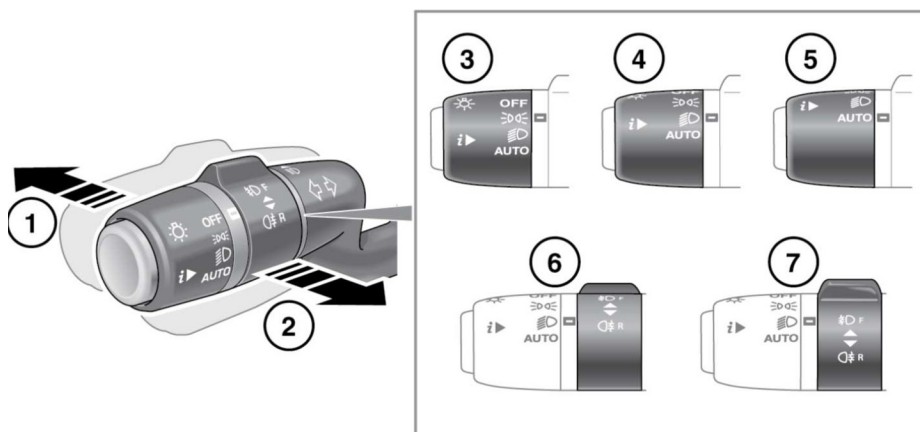
HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

Exterior lights

LIGHTING CONTROL



E150271

1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **47, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

Note: Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.

2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Side lamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the side lamps on. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **46, SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)**.
4. Headlamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the headlamps on.
5. **AUTO:** With Auto lamps selected, when the ambient light fades and the ignition is on, the side lamps, tail lamps, dipped beam headlamps and licence plate lamps will switch on automatically. Headlamp courtesy delay, High beam assist and the Windscreen wipers detection may also be activated.

Note: Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the Auto lamps to activate.

6. Rear fog lamps: Will operate only while side lamps, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **45, REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)**.
7. Front fog lamps: Will operate only while side lamps, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **46, FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)**.

In the event of a bulb failure, it should be noted that some bulbs are renewable only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. See **197, CHANGING A BULB**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

The Daytime running lamps are LED lamps.

Exterior lights

With the lighting control in the OFF position or in the AUTO position, while the lighting conditions do not require the headlamps to be on, then the Daytime running lamps will switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (automatic transmission).
- The parking brake is not applied - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, the Daytime running lamps feature can be disabled or enabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lamps master switch is in the AUTO (5) position and the ignition is turned off. The headlamps will remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note: The time delay may be changed via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See 40, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The Courtesy delay can be switched off at any time by pressing the headlamp button on the Smart key.

HIGH BEAM ASSIST

This feature of the Xenon lighting automatically selects and deselects the high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

Note: It is not recommended that High beam assist is used while driving off road.

For High beam assist to become operational, the main lighting switch must be in the AUTO position (5), with dipped beam headlamps selected.

The Instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when High beam assist is selected. See 47, **HIGH BEAM ASSIST (GREEN)**.

High beam assist will activate only when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system will deactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

To manually select high beam, move the stalk to the high beam position as normal. To return to High beam assist, move the stalk back to the central position.

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the stalk to the flash position (2) and High beam assist will be cancelled. To return to High beam assist, push the stalk to the high beam position (1) and then return it to the central position.

To turn off High beam assist, turn the main lighting control from Auto to headlamps.

This feature can be disabled/enabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See 40, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The following may affect the operation of High beam assist:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, for example cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, for example rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central highway barrier.

L

Exterior lights

Note: The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate the high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to make sure of the correct use of the headlamps at all times.

Note: Make sure the forward facing sensors on the back of the rear view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If Auto lamps is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lamps will automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

Misting of lamp lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This will not affect the performance of the lamps and will clear during normal operation.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING



E150305

Use the headlamp levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only	Top
Driver and front seat passenger	Top
Driver and passengers in all seats	Rotate down 1 notch
Maximum gross vehicle weight	Rotate down 1 notch
Maximum rear axle load	Rotate down 2 notches

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

With the headlamps on, the AFS will adjust the beams when cornering to provide an improved illumination in the direction of travel.

The AFS is deactivated when:

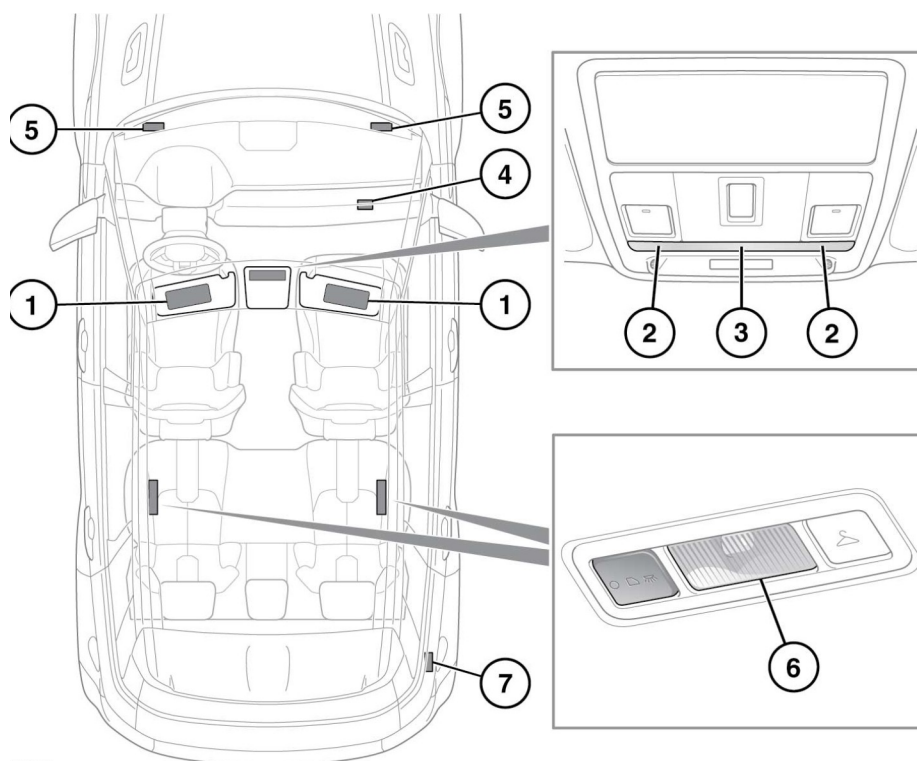
- Reverse gear is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected, the headlamps will attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary. The AFS warning indicator will illuminate to indicate that a fault is present. See **45, ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)**.

If the warning lamp illuminates, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Interior lights

INTERIOR LIGHTS



153605

1. Sun visor lamps: Illuminate when the vanity mirror is opened.
2. Map reading lamps: Move a finger close to (or touch) the relevant lens to switch on/off.
Note: If you are wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lamps.
3. Front interior lamp: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to (or touch) the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination.
4. Glove box lamp: Illuminates when the glove box is opened.
5. Footwell lamps: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.

Interior lights

6. Rear interior/reading lamps: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Press the switch to switch on and off manually. Touch the front courtesy lamp lens for approximately 2 seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination of the rear interior lamps.
7. Luggage compartment lamp: Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

While the exterior lamps are turned on, the intensity of the interior switch illumination can be adjusted. See **298, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

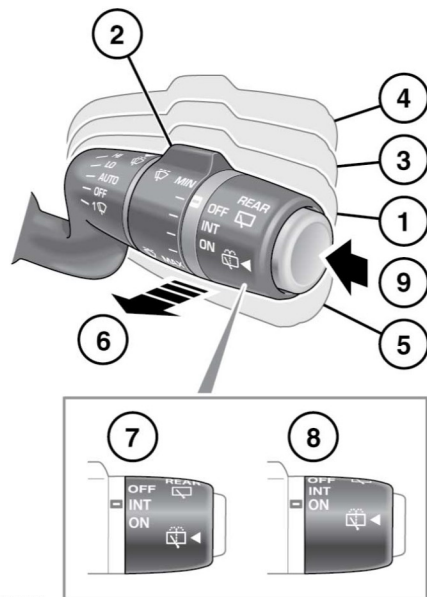
On some vehicles the LED ambient lighting can be configured for colour and intensity through the Touch screen. Although the exterior lamps must be turned on while changes are being made, a 1 second preview of any changes made can be seen if the exterior lamps are turned off. See **69, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: Vehicles without configurable ambient lighting will illuminate the standard white light for the interior lamps.

Wipers and washers

WIPER OPERATION

- ❗ Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen.
- ❗ In freezing or hot conditions, make sure the wipers have not stuck to the glass. Use the winter park position to lift the wiper blades away from the screen. See **55, WINTER PARK POSITION**.
- ❗ Remove any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen scuttle, before operating the wipers.



Vehicles with a rain sensor:

1. Automatic rain sensing mode: The front wipers will respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).

- ❗ Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the automatic rain sensing system operates during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position the more responsive the system will become.

When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system will perform a single wipe.

3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the stalk is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the stalk position.

Note: The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.

7. **INT:** Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency will increase with vehicle speed.
8. **ON:** Rear wiper, continuous operation.

Wipers and washers

9. Rear window wash/wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

Vehicles without a rain sensor:

1. Intermittent wipe: The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).



Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

2. Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (1) is selected. The higher the setting the more frequently wipes occur.

Note: Wipe frequency will increase with vehicle speed.

3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the stalk is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the stalk position.

Note: The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.

7. **INT:** Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency will increase with vehicle speed.
8. **ON:** Rear wiper, continuous operation.

9. Rear window wash/wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

Note: When reverse gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper will activate.

Note: The rear wiper will not operate while the tailgate is open.

Note: If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended Land Rover screen cleaning paste. See 252, **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Note: The windscreen will no longer be wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function will degrade if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position will move the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See 203, **WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

Note: If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out will temporarily halt the wiper's operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and vehicle ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.

RAIN SENSOR

The rain sensor (if fitted) is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activate the windscreen wipers accordingly.

Wipers and washers

Note: Static droplets may not be detected on the initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper stalk to the **AUTO** position. The behaviour of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (2).

Note: If the wiper stalk switch is turned to the **AUTO** position the wipers will not operate if either of the front doors are open.

Note: In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that under these conditions the wiper controls are returned to the **OFF** position.

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting will be restored automatically.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted will also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Rear wiper

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper will increase when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

DRIP WIPE

If the Drip wipe function is configured, the wipers will operate a few seconds after a wash/wipe cycle has finished, to clear any remaining drips from the windscreen.



This function can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

WINTER PARK POSITION

The wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. This allows the wiper blades to be lifted away from the screen, while the vehicle is stationary, to limit the risk of freezing to the glass and to facilitate the removal of debris or obstructions, for example, snow, mud, leaves, etc. The Winter park position can be enabled/disabled from the **Vehicle Set-Up** menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: Do not drive the vehicle with the wipers in the Winter park position. The wipers should always be re-set to their normal park position before the vehicle is driven.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

The optional headlamp power wash operates automatically with the windscreen wash and will operate only if the headlamps are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.

Wipers and washers

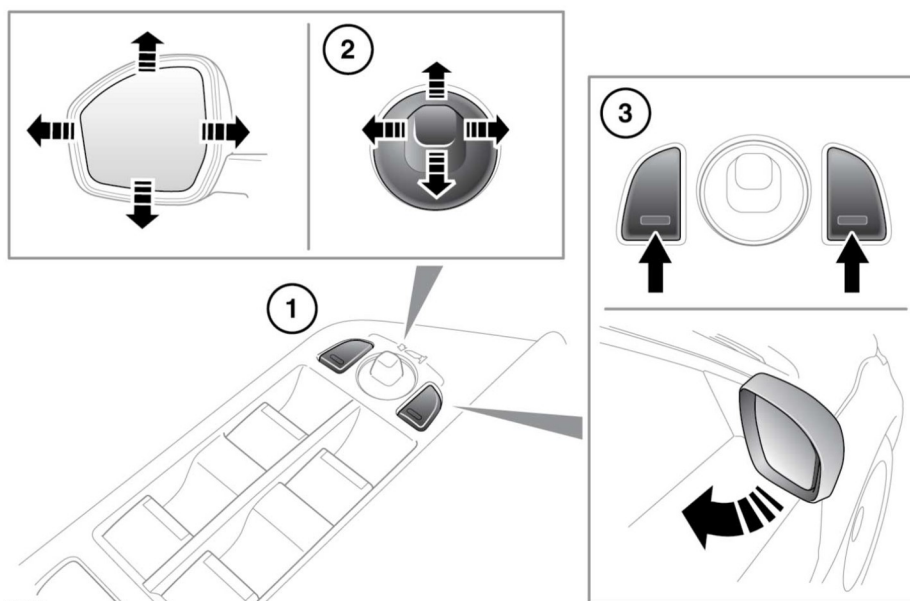
Headlamp wash operates every fourth operation of the screen washers, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or the ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle. See **48, LIGHTING CONTROL**, or **83, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

Note: *The headlamps are washed alternately to prevent the washer fluid from reducing the light output from both headlamps simultaneously.*

Mirrors

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



1. Mirror selector switches: Press to select the left or right mirror.
2. Mirror adjustment switch: Move up/down/left or right to adjust the mirror glass position.
3. Press both mirror selector switches together to fold/unfold the mirrors (power-fold option).

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Note: Power-fold will operate only if the vehicle's speed is below 20 km/h (12 mph).

Note: The rear view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.

Note: An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head will be disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold then unfold the mirror using the switch.

Note: A thermal cut-out will temporarily disable the power-fold feature if the switches are operated repeatedly.



The mirrors can be configured by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.

Note: If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Mirrors

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

If the vehicle is equipped with memory seats, when reverse is selected the door mirrors can be set to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle of the kerb side for reversing.

The automatic mirror dip feature can be enabled or disabled using the **Vehicle Set-Up** menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted while the mirrors are dipped;

1. With the ignition on, select reverse.
2. With the mirror adjust controls, adjust to the desired dip position.
3. Select neutral. This will store your setting for future use.

The next time reverse is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of reverse, the mirrors will return to their previous position.




Note: *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph) in reverse, the mirrors will return to their normal driving position for enhanced visibility.*




HEATED MIRRORS

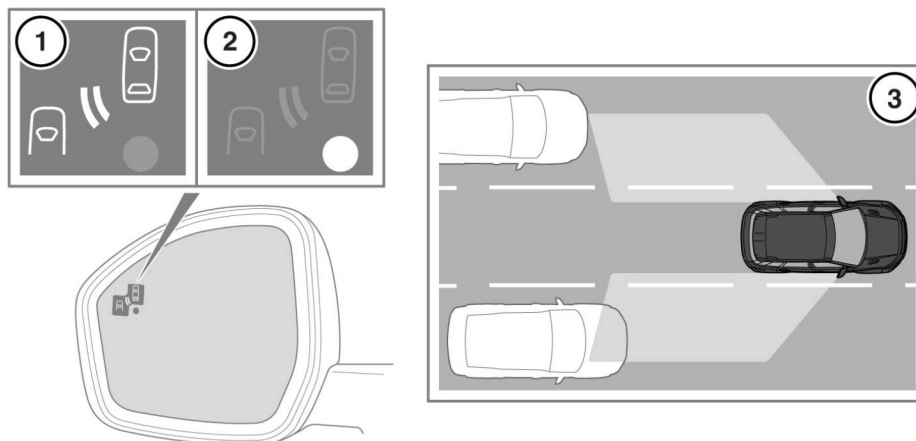
The rear view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.

Blind spot monitoring

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

-  The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.
-  Please note that BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.
-  BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc.

-  The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.
-  Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.
-  Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



E153347

The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, that is not easily visible by the driver and is designed to identify any object overtaking the vehicle (3). The system uses a radar on each side of the vehicle to identify any overtaking vehicle/object within the blind spot area of the vehicle, while disregarding other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.

If an object is identified by the BSM system as being an overtaking vehicle/object, an amber warning icon (1) illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror, to alert the driver that there is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 6 metres (20 feet) behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 metres (8.2 feet) from the side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane).

Blind spot monitoring

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

Note: The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

The BSM automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The indicator dot (2) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The BSM is automatically disabled and an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirrors when:

- Any transmission is engaged in reverse gear.

- Park (P) is selected for vehicles with automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

Note: Automatic disabling of the BSM does not apply to vehicles with Reverse traffic detection. See 99, REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION.

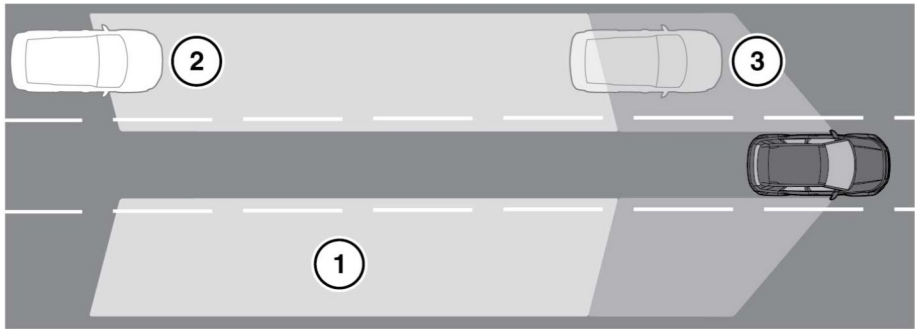
The BSM is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane highways.

The BSM can be enabled or disabled through the Instrument panel menu. See 40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.

Note: If an overtaking vehicle is detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both external mirrors will illuminate.

Note: The BSM is disabled when a trailer is attached.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING



E138437



The Closing vehicle detection system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.



The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect an approaching vehicle.

Blind spot monitoring



Please note that the Closing vehicle detection system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from directly behind the vehicle. Always use the exterior and rear-view mirrors.



Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.

In addition to the functionality provided by the Blind Spot Monitor (BSM), the Closing vehicle detection system monitors a larger area behind the vehicle (1). If a vehicle is identified by the system as being a rapidly approaching vehicle (2), the amber warning icon will flash in the relevant mirror to indicate that there is a potential hazard and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous. When the vehicle reaches the area monitored by the BSM (3), the amber warning icon will illuminate continuously.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 70 metres (230 feet) behind the rear wheels, and up to approximately 2.5 metres (8 feet) from the side of the vehicle.

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

Note: The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

Note: If a rapidly overtaking vehicle is detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.

Note: The Closing vehicle detection system is disabled when a trailer is attached.

Note: When the BSM is disabled through the Instrument panel menu, the Closing vehicle detection system is also disabled. See 40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.

BSM SENSORS

The BSM system will automatically disable if either of the sensors become completely obscured, an amber warning indicator dot (2) is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED** appears in the Message centre.

Note: Blockage testing is only initiated when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) and will take at least 2 minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.

If the sensors become blocked, then please check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost and dirt.

If a fault with one of the radar sensors is detected, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.

If a fault in the system occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Garage door opener

GARAGE DOOR TRANSCIVER

- ⚠ **Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards.**
- ⚠ **When programming the transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure the area is clear. This will prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programme.**
- ⓘ This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.

The door transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to 3 different transmitters, which can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a garage door opener, it equally applies to the previously mentioned applications.

In some countries, this feature is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

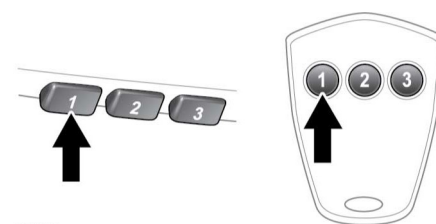
For further information, see **64, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE.**

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

- ⓘ When programming a device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.

For best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter of the garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is hanging straight down.

PROGRAMMING



With the engine switched off:

1. Make sure the ignition system is on.
2. Hold the end of the original garage door opener hand-held transmitter 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously press and hold both the chosen transceiver button on the rear-view mirror, as shown above, and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The indicator lamp will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator lamp flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing lamp indicates successful programming.
4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator lamp does not flash rapidly, release both the transceiver and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure starting with Step 2. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.

Garage door opener

5. Press and hold the programmed garage door opener button and observe the indicator lamp.
 - If the indicator lamp illumination is continuous, programming is complete and your device should operate when the garage door opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds and then released.
 - If the indicator lamp blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and then illuminates continuously, proceed with the following programming instructions for rolling code device equipment.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, make sure the engine is switched off:

1. Make sure the ignition is on (but with the engine switched off).
2. Press and hold the 2 outer buttons on the transceiver in the rear view mirror. Keep the buttons pressed until the indicator lamp begins to flash (this will take approximately 10 seconds), then release the buttons.

All memories in the garage door opener have now been cleared.

Note: Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional garage door opener buttons.

ROLLING CODE DEVICE EQUIPMENT PROGRAMMING

Note: The assistance of a second person, may make the following steps quicker and easier. Once the button has been pressed there are only 30 seconds in which to complete Step 3.

1. At the garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.
 - The name of the button or switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the programmed garage door opener button for 2 seconds and release.
4. Repeat the press, hold, release sequence 3 times to complete the programming process.

The garage door opener in the rear view mirror should now activate the rolling code device.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To programme a device to a previously programmed button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed garage door opener button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator lamp begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the rear-view mirror button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Carry out Step 3 of Programming.

Garage door opener

ENTRY GATE PROGRAMMING

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired rear-view mirror button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE



It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed transceiver buttons be erased for security purposes.

For information on the range of available compatible products or accessories, or for assistance, you should contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

You can also contact the supplier's helpline on **0 0800 0466 354 65**. This toll-free number can be called from anywhere within Europe. No separate country code is required (the first zero is not required when calling from within Germany).

Contact can also be made via the internet. The website address is: **www.eurohomelink.com**.

The e-mail address is:

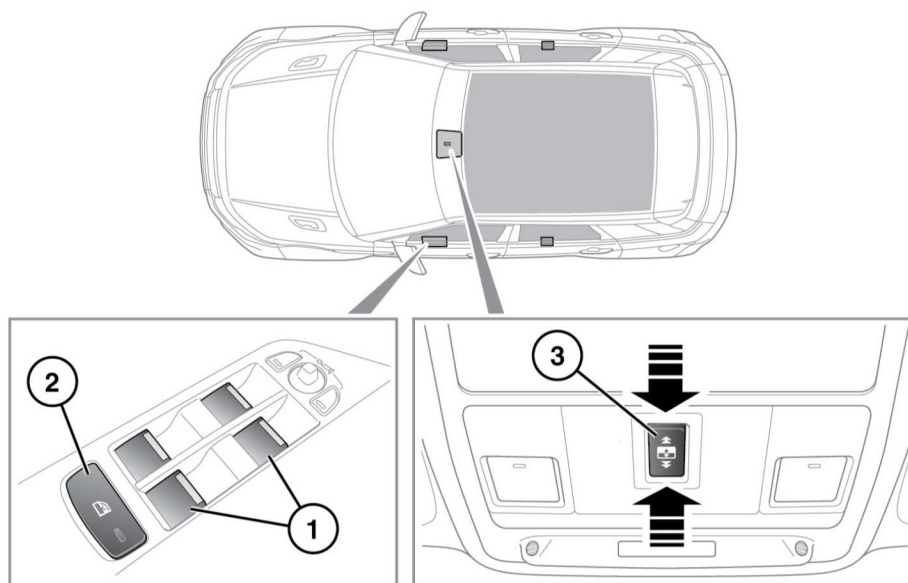
info@eurohomelink.com.

Note: Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

Note: The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Windows

ELECTRIC WINDOWS AND PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND



E155594



To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

1. Window switches: Briefly pull a switch fully up and release, the window will continue to rise until fully closed. Briefly press a switch fully down and release, the window will continue to lower until fully open. Pressing or pulling a switch again will stop the window.

The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

Rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch will lower the window a short distance to give a flow of air. A second press will lower the window to its full extent.

If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm (1 inch) will eliminate the condition.

Note: Coupe models have fixed rear windows and a different switch pack.

2. Rear window isolator switch: The rear windows are isolated when the indicator light in the switch is illuminated.



If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children there is a risk of serious injury or death.

3. Roof blind open/close switch: To open the blind, push from the rear of the switch and release. The blind will slide fully open.

Windows

To close the blind, push from the front of the switch to the first position and release. The blind will fully close. A further press will stop movement of the blind.

Alternatively, push from the front of the switch to the second position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position, then release.

ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION



Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.



Before closing a window or the roof blind, make sure no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.

Anti-trap protection will stop window or roof blind movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or roof blind and its aperture and remove any obstructions (e.g. ice, etc.).

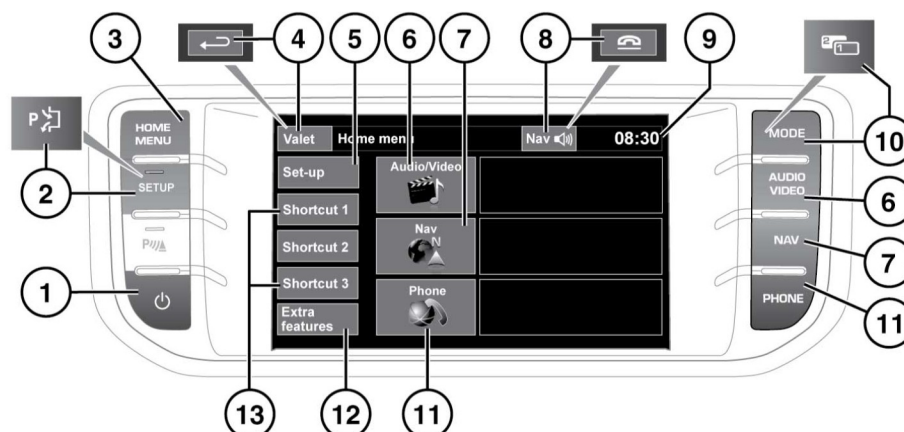
If it is still necessary to raise the window, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
2. Within ten seconds attempt to raise the window again, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time hold the switch in the close position. Hold until closed.

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset.*

Touch screen

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



E153231

⚠ Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

⚠ Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery, preventing the engine from starting.

⚠ Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

1. Press to turn the Touch screen on/off.
2. Press to select the Touch screen **Setup** menu. When Park assist is fitted, this icon is changed and the button should be pressed to activate Park assist.
3. Press to select the **Home menu**.
4. Touch to select the **Valet** mode. During menu mode, the icon is changed to the Back soft key, touch to return to the previous screen displayed
5. Touch to select the Touch screen **Setup** menu.

6. Touch or press to select the **Audio/Video** menu. See **125, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

7. Touch or press to select the **On road Navigation** menu. The current set destination is displayed.

8. While the navigation system is operating, touch to repeat the last given navigation instruction. During a phone call, the icon is changed. Touch to end the call.

9. Touch to adjust the time/date.

10. Press to select the **Mode** menu. When Dual view is fitted, this icon is changed and the button should be pressed to access the Dual view screen display.

11. Touch or press to select the **Phone** menu.

12. Touch to select the **Extra features** menu.

13. Touch to change the shortcuts. See **68, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

TOUCH SCREEN USE

⚠ Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the Touch screen.

Touch screen

TOUCH SCREEN CARE



Do not use abrasive cleaners on the Touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TOUCH SCREEN SETUP

Select **Set-up** from the **Home menu** screen.

The **Set-up** menu screen is divided into categories:

- Screen
- System
- Voice
- Audio

SCREEN SETTINGS

Volume pop-up: Displays the Volume pop-up on/off.

Screensaver: Changes the screensaver.

Time out home: The sub-menu selection screens can be set to revert to the **Home menu** screen after a predetermined length of time.

Theme: Changes the appearance of the Touch screen soft keys.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Button feedback: Select to turn the soft key confirmation tone on/off.

Clock adjust: Select the 12 or 24 hour clock. Set the current time. Select **Date** to change the date, or to alter the date format. Select **Set**, to store the new settings.

Note: The clock can also be adjusted from the Touch screen time display.

Home menu shortcuts: Select up to 2 items from the displayed list to appear as shortcuts on the **Home menu**. Select **Clear** to deselect highlighted items.

Language: Select the required language.

Select **Male** or **Female** voice. Touch **Change** to select alternatives for Voice and text displays. Follow the on-screen instructions to confirm.

Note: Some languages are not yet available for both the System display text and Voice control. In this event, it will be necessary to select a separate language for Voice control.

Volume presets: Adjust the volume for the available system's announcements, for example, Parking aid, Phone, Voice, etc.

VOICE SETTINGS

- **Command list:** Pressing the 'I' soft key next to any command will display alternative ways of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags:** View the categories. Select a category to manage the Voicetags for the chosen system. See **153, VOICETAGS**.
- **Operating guide:** Select to view some brief Voice system instructions. Select **Voice tutorial** for more detailed Voice system instructions (cancel via the displayed pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button).

Touch screen

- **Preferences:** Select to alter the following settings:
 - **Voice profile:** The voice system can be trained to have a greater recognition of a particular voice or accent. The default setting is **Standard**. To build a voice profile for either **User 1** or **User 2**, it is necessary to complete a training programme first.
To complete the training for the first time, select either **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions.
 - **Voice feedback:** Select **On/Off**.
 - **Feedback volume:** Adjust using the +/- buttons. It is not possible to reduce the volume to zero.
- **Voice training:** Select to access the voice system training programme, designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user.
Select **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **153, VOICE TRAINING**.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button on the steering wheel. See **152, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

Each time Valet mode is used a Personal Identification Number (PIN) must be entered.

1. From the **Home menu** screen, select **Valet**.

2. Enter a memorable 4 digit PIN. You will be prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.
3. **Valet mode activated** is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted.

The luggage compartment is now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet mode On** screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select **Valet**.
2. Enter your memorable 4 digit PIN and touch the **OK** button.

Valet mode deactivated is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted.

- The luggage compartment will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The Touch screen will be enabled.

Note: If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

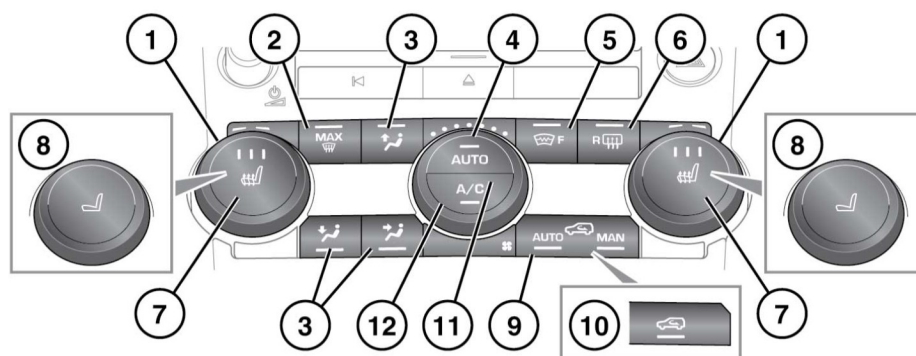
EXTRA FEATURES

This menu allows selected Extra features to be displayed for adjustment, switching on/off, or for information.

There are more Extra features available than can be displayed at any one time, therefore they are displayed in alphabetical order. Use the forward or back soft keys to move to the next screen.

Heating and ventilation

CLIMATE CONTROL



E155771

Note: The climate control system removes moisture from the air and deposits the excess water beneath the vehicle. Puddles may form but this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Note: The LED indicator lamps in the switches will illuminate when the function is selected.

1. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the individual driver/passenger settings.

Note: The maximum possible temperature difference between the driver and passenger settings is 4°C (7°F).

2. **MAX:** Maximum defrost programme.
Press to remove frost or heavy misting from the windscreen. The system will adjust the front blower output for maximum clearing. In addition the windscreen heaters will be activated. Press again to switch off the defrost mode. The screen heaters will remain on for a timed period.
Note: In low temperatures it is advisable to close the centre face level vent and direct air flow from the outer face level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.
3. Air distribution. An LED will illuminate in the selected switches.

Note: More than 1 setting may be selected at a time to achieve the desired distribution.

4. **AUTO** mode: For fully automatic operation.
AUTO mode should be used as the normal operating mode. The air conditioning, heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.
To resume fully automatic operation at any time, press the **AUTO** button.
5. Heated windscreen: The heater will operate for a predetermined timed period before automatically switching off.
6. Heated rear screen: The heater will operate for a predetermined timed period before automatically switching off.
- ⚠ Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the screen.
7. Front heated seats (if fitted). See **71, HEATED SEATS**.
8. Front climate seats (if fitted). See **72, CLIMATE SEATS**.

Heating and ventilation

9. Recirculation (vehicles fitted with an air quality sensor):

- Press the **AUTO/MAN** button once to activate the automatic recirculation mode. The **AUTO** LED indicator will illuminate. The system automatically selects fresh and recirculated air dependent on pollution and cabin humidity information received from the Air quality sensor.
- Press the **AUTO/MAN** button again for a single timed recirculation. The **MAN** LED indicator will illuminate.
- Press and hold the **AUTO/MAN** button until the **MAN** LED indicator flashes, to activate the latched (continuous) recirculation. The **MAN** LED indicator will then illuminate constantly.
- To cancel recirculation, briefly press the button again.

Note: Disabled recirculation is confirmed when both the **AUTO** and the **MAN** LED indicators are not illuminated.

10. Recirculation (vehicles not fitted an air quality sensor):

Press repeatedly to cycle through the options.

- Press briefly to activate the timed recirculation. The button LED indicator illuminates when recirculation is on.
- Press and hold the button to activate latched (continuous) recirculation. The button LED indicator will flash and then illuminate constantly.
- To cancel recirculation, press the button briefly.

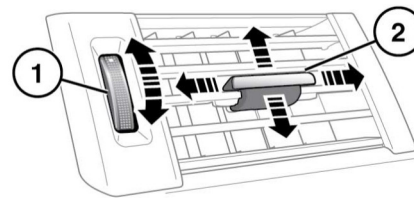
Note: Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.

11. Air conditioning.

12. Blower speed control: In manual mode current speed selection is indicated by illuminated LED's.

Timed climate control operates the optional auxiliary heater and can be set in the Touch screen. See **73, TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL**.

AIR VENT OPERATION



E155740

The vents can be opened using the following procedure:

1. To open the vent, rotate the thumb wheel fully upwards, from the bottom (closed) position to the (top) open position.
2. After the vent has been opened using the thumb wheel, the direction control can be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

Note: The vent can only be fully closed again using the thumbwheel. The vent can be closed regardless of the position of the directional control.

- ⚠ Do not insert or attach items to the vents, for example, pens, air fresheners, etc..
- ⚠ Do not use excessive force while operating the vent control or the thumb wheel.

HEATED SEATS

Note: Seat heaters consume a great amount of battery power. They will operate only when the engine is running.

Heating and ventilation

Front Heated Seats

Press the relevant front heated seat button to enable. A pop up menu will appear in the Touch screen.

- Touch the up arrow icon to switch on at maximum (3 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow icon once or twice to reduce the setting (2 and 1 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow a third time to switch off the heated seat.

Rear Heated Seats

Note: *If fitted, the rear heated seats (non-climate) can only be operated using the switches located on the rear of the centre console.*

Press the relevant rear heated seat button to switch the required seat heater on at the maximum setting; the 3 LED indicators on the button will illuminate.

Press a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting; 2 LED indicators will illuminate.

Press a third time to set the heated seat at the lowest setting; 1 LED indicator will illuminate.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: *The Climate seats will only operate when the engine is running.*

Press the relevant front climate seat button to enable. A pop up menu will appear in the Touch screen.

Heated ventilation

- Touch the up arrow icon to switch heated ventilation on at maximum (3 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 red bars).

- Touch the down arrow a third time to switch off the seat ventilation.

Cooled ventilation

- Touch the down arrow icon to switch cooled ventilation on at maximum (3 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow a third time to switch off seat ventilation.

Seat zone selection

Constant selection of the **Seat zone** soft key will scroll through 3 choices of seat zone; full seat, cushion, or seatback only.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Your vehicle may be fitted with an auxiliary heater which is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's fuel tank. The heater only operates at low ambient temperatures while the engine is running. The auxiliary heater helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant for improved heater performance. It can also be controlled by the Timed climate control system (if fitted).

When the heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. This is normal and is not a cause for concern.



Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.



Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes which may cause unconsciousness or death.

Heating and ventilation

TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL

The timed climate control system provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of driver and passengers entering. Dependent on the external temperature, the system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin or operates the auxiliary heater to warm it. The Auxiliary heater is also operated to warm the engine and aid starting in very cold conditions.

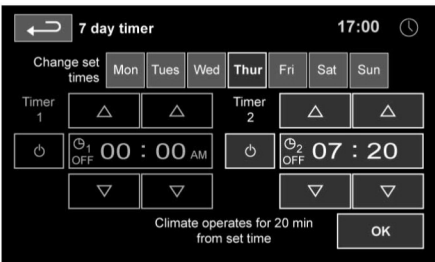
- The timed climate control system may be operated by either the Touch screen or the remote handset.
- The system may not operate or will switch off automatically in the following scenarios:
- If the fuel level is low.
 - If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
 - If the coolant temperature is at or above its required temperature.

SETTING A TIME FOR TIMED CLIMATE OPERATION

The Touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the climate control **AUTO** button will flash.

Note: The system will cease operation if the engine is started

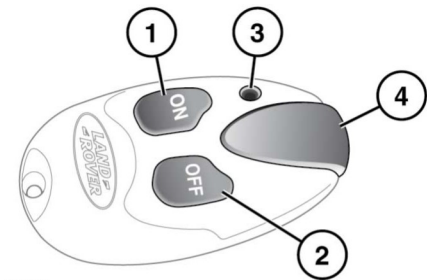


- To set a timed climate programme:
1. Press the **HOME MENU** hard key.
 2. Touch the **Timed Climate** soft key. This soft key may be set on a personal shortcut or accessed via the **Extra Features** soft key. Select the day for which you want to set a programme or select **All Week** to select the same start time for every day.
 3. Touch the **Timer 1** or **Timer 2** icon. The timers can be toggled between on and off using the power soft key.
 4. Touch the up or down arrows to set the start time. Hours and minutes are adjusted separately.
 5. Touch **OK**. The screen will display the activation time. If required, set the time for the other timer using the same process.

*Note: The time format, 12/24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the **System settings** menu. See 40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.*

A current heating cycle will be cancelled if the engine is started. Any programmed heating cycle may be cancelled by touching the relevant power soft key on the timer set up menu or the **Power** soft key on the **Timed Climate** information home menu.

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



1. **ON** button.

Heating and ventilation

2. **OFF** button.
3. LED (operation indicator).
4. Antenna.

Note: Avoid touching the antenna when operating the **ON** or **OFF** buttons.

The remote control has an approximate range of 100 metres. There is no need to point the antenna at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds. The LED will illuminate to confirm that an automatic heating programme has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the heater is active.

The heating programme will continue for 20-30 minutes, when it will switch off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. It also turns off automatically if the engine is started.

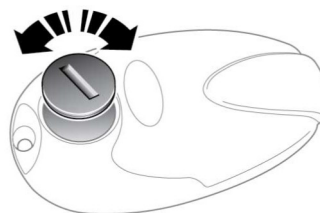
The LED indicator signals various states and conditions for the heater as follows:

- Illuminates red for 2 seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the programme has stopped.
- Flashes green or red for 2 seconds then stops when the **ON** or **OFF** buttons are pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Illuminates orange for 2 seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for 5 seconds to indicate that no action has been taken and the remote battery should be replaced.

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Extra remote controls can be programmed to operate the heater. A maximum of 3 remote controls can be programmed to each vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to purchase extra remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



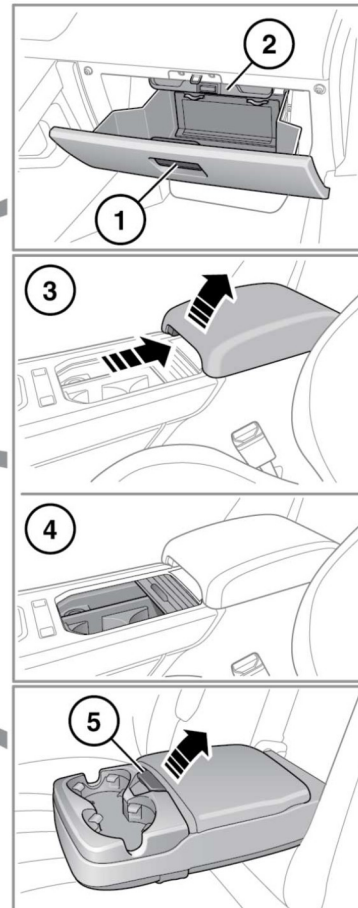
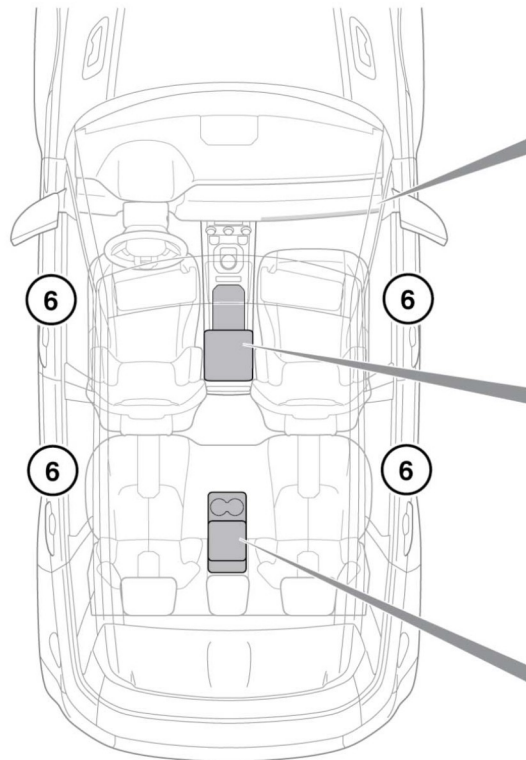
E155971

With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin or a similar implement to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, making sure the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

Note: Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

Storage compartments

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



E 155262

1. Glovebox.
2. Inside the glovebox is a drop down storage area for the Owner's Handbook pack.
3. Sliding armrest to reveal the cubby box.
Slide the armrest rearward to access the release lever.
Pull the release lever and then raise the armrest.



To avoid personal injury, keep hands and fingers clear from the front and rear edges of the sliding armrest during the opening and closing of the cubby box.

4. Sliding top to reveal the cup holders.



Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.

5. Rear armrest storage and cup holders.

Storage compartments

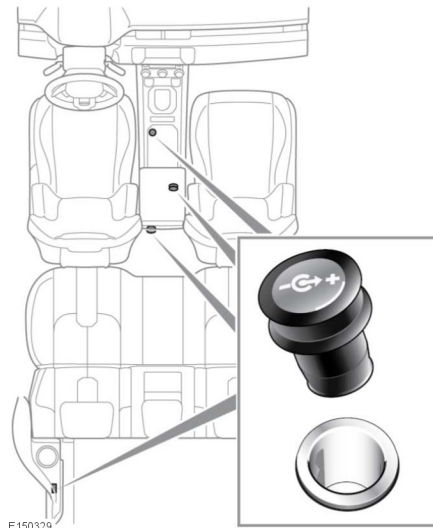
6. Storage areas.



Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move.

If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to a sudden braking or direction change, loose items can cause serious injury.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



Only use Land Rover approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If you are in any doubt contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.





The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

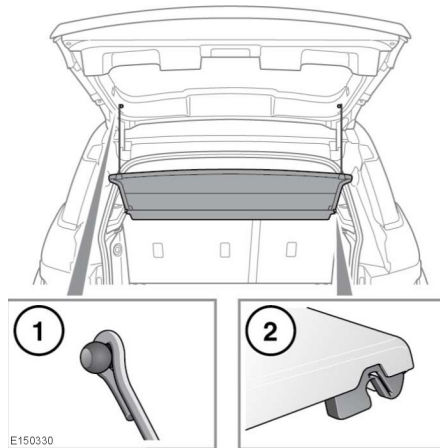
Note: Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.

Load carrying

LOAD CARRYING

 **Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.**

 **Always make sure objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.**




To remove the loadspace cover:

1. Release the 2 straps from the pins on the tailgate.
2. Pull the cover rearwards to release the retaining brackets on the edges of the cover from the pins on the loadspace side trim.

 **Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.**


Fitment of the cover is the reverse of removal.

 **Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle.**

Storing the cover:

1. Remove the loadspace cover.
2. Fold the rear seats forward.
3. Position the cover vertically, approximately where the upright rear seatbacks are normally. The top surface of the cover must be facing forwards with the retaining brackets at the top.
4. Locate the retaining brackets onto the side trim pins.
5. Return the rear seats to the upright locked position.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

 **A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and during cross winds.**

 **Driving off road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended.**

Fit only a roof rack system that is designed for use with your vehicle. For further information, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

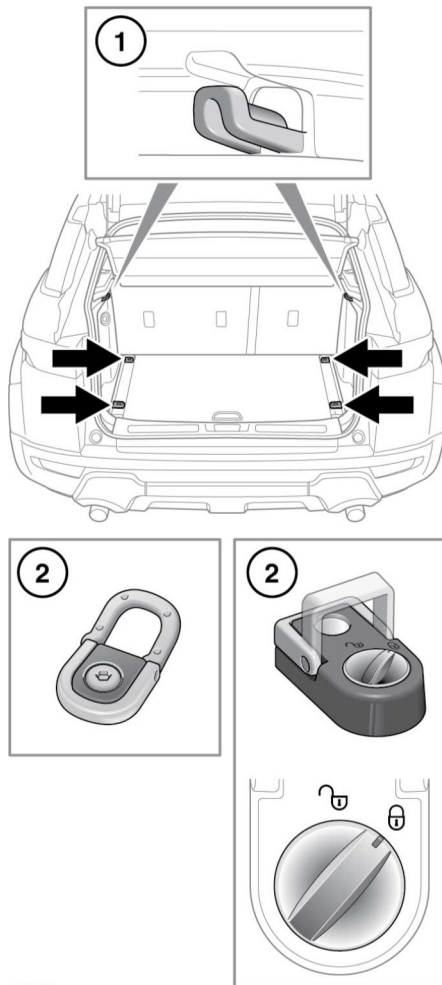
The maximum load for a Land Rover approved roof rack system is 75 kg (165 lb) while driving on road. Off road driving reduces the limit to 50 kg (110 lb). The weight of the approved roof rack system is not calculated as part of the load.

If an alternative roof rack system is used, the weight of that system must be included as part of the load weight.

Loads must be evenly distributed without overhanging the rack. After travelling 50 km (30 miles) check the security of the roof rack and any load.

Load carrying

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E150331



All items carried in the luggage area should be properly secured.

1. Bag hooks: The bag hooks should only be used to secure light items such as shopping bags.

2. Load securing lashing eyes: To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, 4 lashing eyes are located in the rear loadspace floor.

If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, first turn the locking button counter clockwise to unlock. Press the button and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the button to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly until you hear a click. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

Note: A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Towing

TOWING WEIGHTS

Maximum permissible towing weights	On-road	Off-road
Unbraked trailers	750 kg (1650 lb)	750 kg (1650 lb)
Trailers with overrun/electric brakes (4WD)	1800 kg (3968 lb)	750 kg (1650 lb)
Trailers with overrun/electric brakes (2WD)	1500 kg (3330 lb)	750 kg (1650 lb)
Nose weight	150 kg (330 lb)	150 kg (330 lb)

See 254, WEIGHTS, for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross Train Weight (GTW), axle weights and maximum payload.

Europe only


When towing, the maximum permissible GVW can be increased by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lb) provided that the road speed is limited to 97 km/h (60 mph).


Note: When calculating rear axle loading, remember that the trailer nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage area, weight on the roof rack, and the weight of rear seat passengers must all be added together.


Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.


The Touch screen can display a rear view to assist with the reversing of the vehicle with a trailer attached. See 123, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM and also 123, TOW ASSIST.

TOWING A TRAILER

- 

Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking which in turn can lead to loss of control and increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.
- 

To preserve handling and stability, only fit Land Rover approved towing accessories.
- 

Do not loop the breakaway cable over the tow ball as it may slide off.
- 

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and loss of control.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
 - If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
 - Make sure trailer tyre pressures are set to trailer manufacturer's recommendations.


Towing

- To maintain vehicle stability, it is essential that the trailer is loaded so that it remains parallel to the ground. This is particularly important when towing twin axled trailers.
- If the vehicle is loaded to maximum GVW the nose weight is limited to 150 kg (330 lbs). See **79, TOWING WEIGHTS**.
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all trailer lights.

Australia only:

Nose weight must be a minimum of 7% of gross caravan/trailer weight, up to a maximum of 150 kg (330 lb).

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

-  Attach only approved electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket.

The vehicle connector provides a 5 amp output which must not be exceeded. An accessory harness kit increasing output to 15 amp is available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

When a trailer's electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer warning indicator will flash in time with the direction indicators. See **46, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

When a trailer is attached, TSA will automatically detect when a trailer sway is developing. It will then gradually reduce vehicle speed by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

HITCH ASSIST

Hitch assist is a user selectable Touch screen feature that can aid the process of guiding the vehicle to a trailer tow hitch. Use Hitch assist while reversing the vehicle to a trailer hitch.

Proceed as follows:

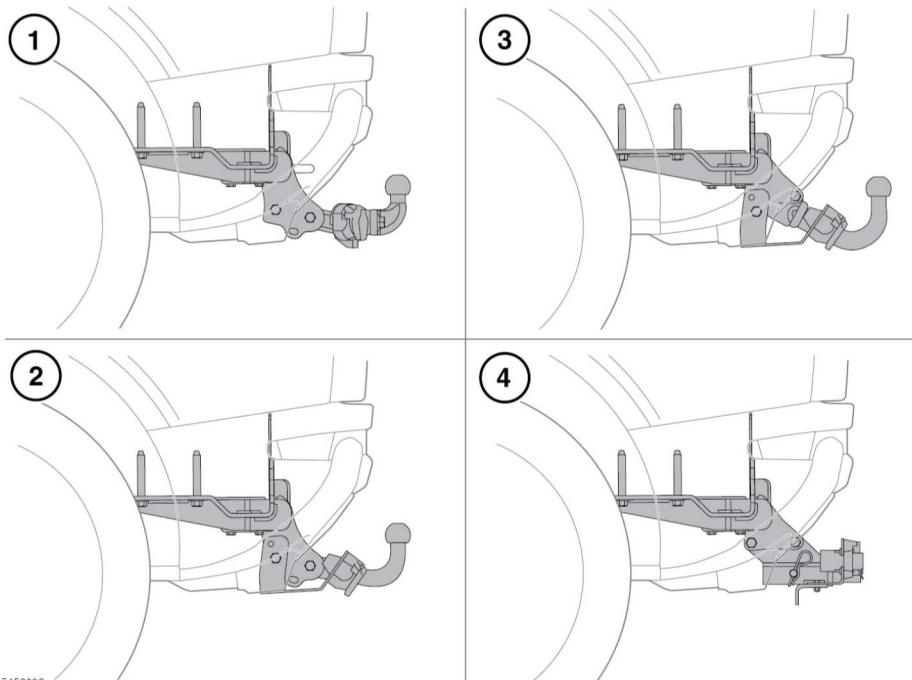
1. Engage reverse gear. The rear camera provides a wide-angle rear view colour image on the Touch screen.
2. Touch the **Hitch assist** icon on the Touch screen to enable the Hitch assist guidance lines to be displayed. See **97, REAR CAMERA**.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm (2 ft) of the trailer tow hitch, an automated zoom feature is operated to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre carefully until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Fit and remove instructions are supplied with this accessory fit item. Make sure they are kept in a safe place.

Towing

TOW BALL OPTIONS

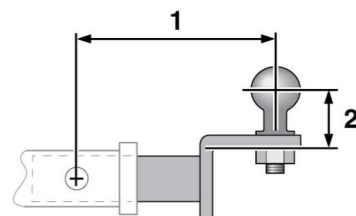


E150332

1. Bolt on tow ball onto flange.
2. Fixed swan neck tow ball.
3. Detachable tow ball.
4. Receiver for hitch (drawbar). Australia only.

TRAILER HITCH

When selecting a drawbar for the receiver, the following dimensions must be adhered to:



E155916

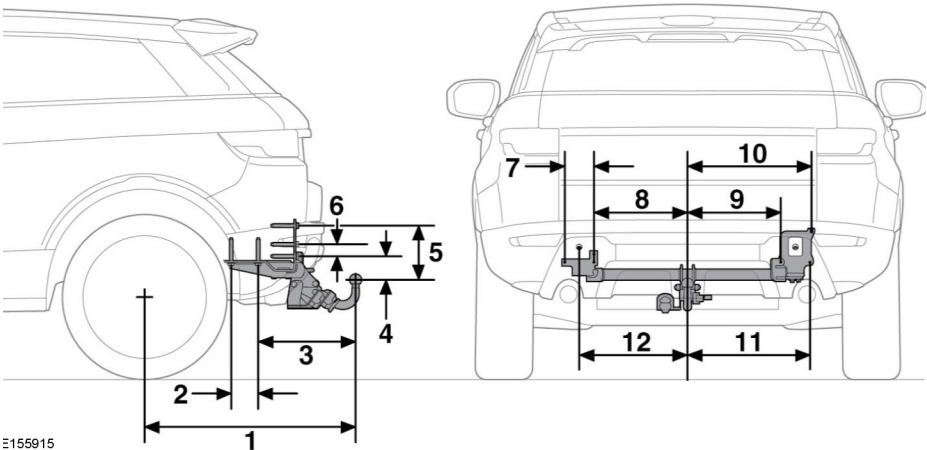
1. The maximum recommended drawbar length is 178 mm (7 in).
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a rise of 68 mm (2.7 in) is recommended.

Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest information.

L

Towing

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS





Ref.	Dimension	millimetres	Inches
1	Wheel centre to centre of tow ball	870	34.3
2	Fixing points	110	4.3
3	Fixing point to centre of tow ball	405	16.0
4	Centre of tow ball to tow bar attachment	83	3.3
5	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	220	8.7
6	Fixing points	32	1.3
7	Fixing points	130	5.1
8	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	415	16.3
9	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	415	16.3
10	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	545	21.4
11	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	550	21.6
12	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	480	18.9

Note: Dimensions refer to towing equipment
officially released by Land Rover.

Starting the engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

 **Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**

 If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic convertor due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (P) or Neutral (N) is selected.
3. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **298, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay the brake pedal must remain pressed.


Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released if it is safe to do so.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

While the vehicle is stationary:

1. Make sure Park (P) is selected for vehicles with an automatic transmission or neutral for a manual transmission vehicle. Apply the parking brake.
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

While the vehicle is moving:

 It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds. With either method, **Engine Stop Button Pressed** is displayed in the Message centre.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the ignition without starting the engine:

1. Make sure the brake pedal is not pressed and a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate in the Instrument panel. See **298, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

 If the brake pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

ROLLING RE-START

Note: The engine **START/STOP** button will be inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.

Starting the engine

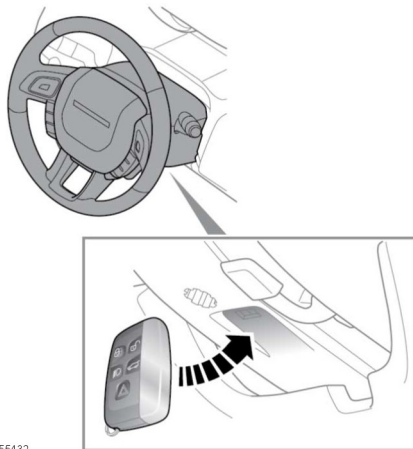
A rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (N) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the Keyless start backup to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The Keyless start backup can only be used when one of the following messages is displayed in the Message centre;

- Smart Key Not Found. Position As Shown And Press Start Button
- Reposition Smart Key And Press Start Button
- Wrong Smart Key



E1156432

1. Position the Smart key flat against the underside of the steering column with the buttons facing downwards.

Note: The steering column has markings on the side to aid placement of the Smart key.

2. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.

Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.

3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the foot pedal can be released if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Intelligent stop/start

INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the ignition is turned on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine will turn off if the vehicle is stopped, for example at traffic lights. When the brake pedal is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine will restart automatically.

During operation of the Intelligent stop/start system a warning lamp will illuminate. See **47, INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)**.

To activate an automatic engine stop:

- Stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and apply sufficient brake pressure to make sure the vehicle is stationary. For manual transmissions, neutral must also be selected and the clutch pedal fully released.
- Alternatively, while stationary, select neutral. Also fully release the clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

To activate an automatic engine restart release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected. For manual transmissions, the engine will restart when the clutch pedal is fully pressed, prior to engaging a gear.

The engine will also restart if one of the following occurs:

- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- An automatic transmission shift paddle is used to select a gear.
- Reverse gear is selected.
- Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- Battery charge becomes low.

- Brake vacuum has been reduced (for example, using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off).

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- An automatic transmission shift paddle has been used to select a gear.
- The external temperature is less than approximately 0 °C (32 °F).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40 °C (104 °F).
- The engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The climate control system demand requires the engine to be running (for example, in Defrost mode).
- The battery charge is low.
- The bonnet is opened.
- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.

DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START

To switch the system off, press the **ECO** switch. See **298, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The engine will restart automatically if the switch is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress.

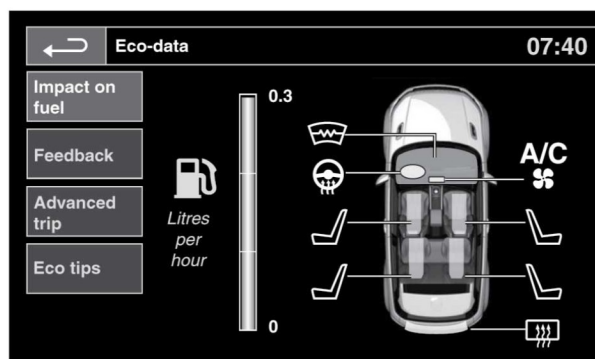
To confirm that the system is off, the message **ECO Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed in the Message centre.

Note: The intelligent stop/start system will automatically reactivate the next time the ignition is turned on.

If the **ECO** switch is pressed while there is a fault, the message **Eco Stop/Start Not Available** is displayed.

Eco-data

ECO-DATA CONTROLS



E155558

The Eco-data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing vehicle data and driving tips. The Eco-data system can be accessed through the **Extra features** menu in the Touch screen. See **69, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Eco-data can also be displayed in the Instrument panel. See **41, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

When selected, Eco-data provides the following options:

- **Impact on fuel:** This option displays the impact electrical loads are having on fuel economy.
- **Feedback:** This option displays the impact driving style is having on fuel economy.
- **Advanced trip:** This option displays details on the last 3 trips.
- **Eco tips:** This option displays hints and tips on how to improve fuel economy.

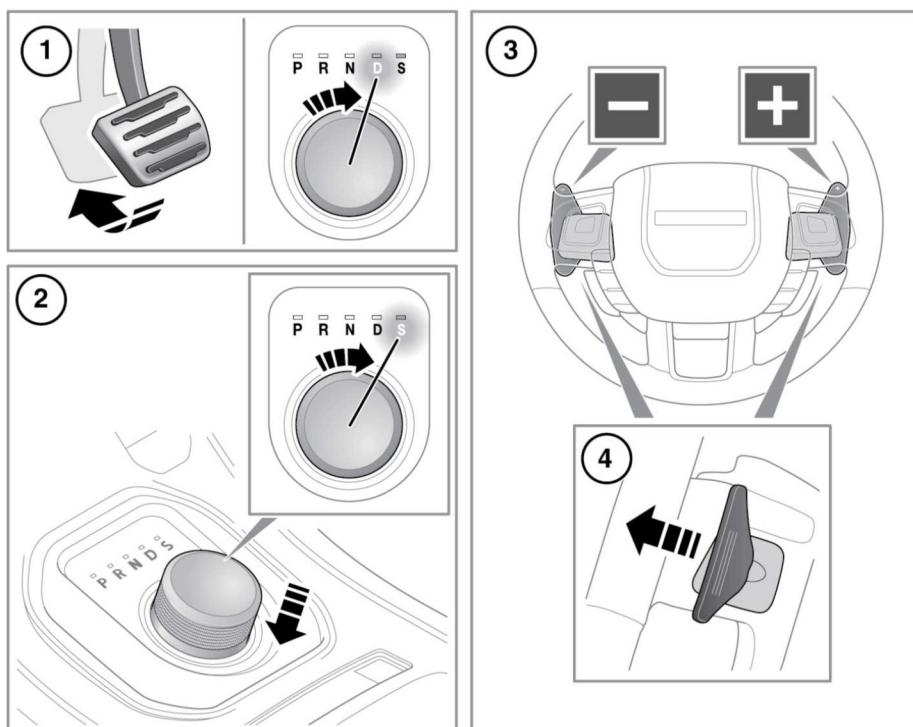
Note: The Eco-data system will only begin recording data after the vehicle has travelled 1 km (0.6 miles).

Note: The Eco-data system may not measure or record data when in some Terrain Response modes, and/or if Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.

Note: The Eco-data system only monitors driver inputs. Any automatic inputs from the vehicle, for example, throttle and brake force applied by the Adaptive cruise control system will not be measured. Data not being measured and recorded will be greyed out in the Instrument panel.

Gearbox

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



E155586

The rotary gear selector rotates in either direction. At engine start up, the gear selector elevates out of its parked position.

Gearbox

The CommandShift™ and gear selector status will be displayed in the Message centre.

1. To select Drive (**D**), Reverse (**R**), Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**), apply the foot brake, then rotate the gear selector to the required position. The related LED indicator by the gear selector will illuminate.

While in **D**, the gear changing is fully automatic. The shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed.

To achieve rapid acceleration (kick-down) while in **D**, quickly depress the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing will resume.

Note: Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N** or **P** make sure the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.

Note: If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the foot brake is applied, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove the pressure from the gear selector, make sure the foot brake is applied and select the required gear as described.

2. To select **S** mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The related LED by the gear selector will illuminate.

The transmission will stay in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance.

To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

3. CommandShift™ gear selector paddles. Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** positions. CommandShift™ can be configured to work in **S** only, or in **S** and **D** from the **Driving Features** menu, which is accessed via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu in the Instrument panel. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. Lightly pull the left paddle for downshifts or lightly pull the right paddle for upshifts.

TRANSMISSION COMMANDSHIFT SELECTED will appear briefly in the Message centre when CommandShift™ is first selected.

CommandShift™ can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly at the recommended (upshift) gear change point. See **46, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

Note: If continued use of the CommandShift™ gear selector paddles is required, select **D** or **S**.

4. To exit the CommandShift™ mode and return to **S** mode, lightly pull and hold the upshift (+) paddle for approximately 1 second. To return to **D** mode, move the rotary gear selector back to the **D** position.



Before exiting the vehicle, always make sure the gear selector is in the P position, the engine is turned off, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.



Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Gearbox

- ⚠ Never select **R** while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- ⚠ Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- ⚠ Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting **D** or **R**, or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected. Doing so can result in serious transmission and/or engine damage.
- ⚠ Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary with a drive gear selected and the engine running. Always select **N** and apply the EPB if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.
- ⚠ Do not use **N** for vehicle recovery. See 247, **RECOVERY METHOD**.

ROTARY GEAR SELECTOR

P should normally be selected before switching off the engine. If any other gear is selected at turn off, the selector will move to **P** before retracting into the centre console.

If the engine is switched off with **N** selected, the system will wait for 10 minutes before selecting **P**. This delay allows the vehicle enough time to be conveyed through a car wash.

IF THE SELECTOR FAILS TO ELEVATE

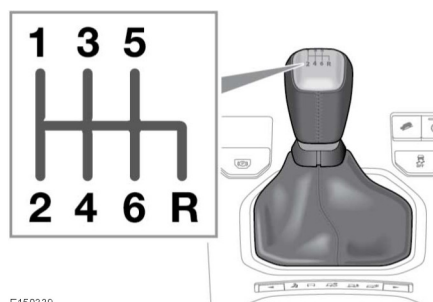
If the drive selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The selector should elevate as normal.

If the selector still fails to elevate, even if there is no obstruction, a fault in the system is indicated. The selector can still be used in the lowered position. Make sure **P** is selected before engine switch off. Have the fault rectified at the earliest opportunity.

TRANSMISSION FAULT

In the event that the transmission develops a fault, a warning message may be displayed in the Message centre and only limited gears may become available. You should seek qualified assistance immediately.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



- ⚠ Selection of reverse gear is prevented when the vehicle is travelling in excess of 24 km/h (15 mph). Never attempt to engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in forward motion. This may result in serious transmission damage and costly repairs.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly at the recommended (upshift) gear change point. See 46, **GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

Stability control

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.



This vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

DSC maintains vehicle stability, even in critical driving situations, when accelerating and when starting from a standstill. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer and oversteer and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

SWITCHING DSC OFF



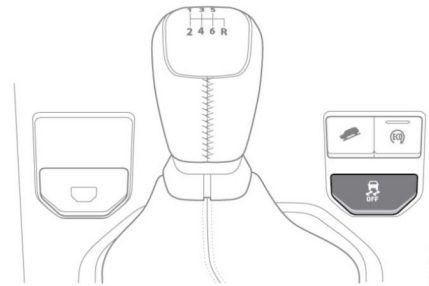
Safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling DSC. In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that you do not disable DSC.



DSC must be switched off when traction devices are fitted. See 235, USING SNOW CHAINS.

In some driving conditions it may be appropriate to disable DSC to improve traction. These conditions include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or when on a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.



E153551

To disable DSC, press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch. The DSC OFF warning lamp will illuminate. See 90, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC). Deactivating DSC also reduces the level of Electronic Traction Control (ETC) intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

SWITCHING DSC ON

Note: DSC is enabled automatically at the start of each ignition cycle.

Press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch to re-enable DSC. Alternatively, select a new Terrain Response special programme.

Note: DSC is automatically disabled when the ignition is switched off.

Traction control

ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)

ETC operates in conjunction with Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and is designed to assist when 1 or more wheels have lost traction, wheel spin for example.

If a wheel loses traction, ETC will operate the brake on that wheel and may also manipulate the engine output, until the wheel regains traction. The amber DSC warning lamp in the Instrument panel will flash to inform the driver that ETC is operating.

Suspension

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS





The Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors road and driver inputs. It detects rough road and off road conditions, optimises the vehicle suspension settings to suit each surface type and adjusts control for greater ride comfort.

Adaptive dynamics is also linked to the Terrain Response dynamic programme, modifying the suspension settings for a more sporting character.

If **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, the vehicle can still be driven. The fault may be temporary. If the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Brakes

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

-  **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion.**
-  **Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine turned off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.**
-  **If the red brake warning indicator illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.**
-  **Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.**

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide even with the brakes applied. This is because without wheel rotation, the ABS cannot determine vehicle movement.

To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to allow some wheel rotation. Then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, the EBA system will automatically boost the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but driving conditions mean that the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) operates on the front wheels, the EBA system will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **44, BRAKE (AMBER)**. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)


The EBD system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.


If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle for example), The EBD system will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, The EBD system will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.


A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the red brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **43, BRAKE (RED)**. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

Brakes

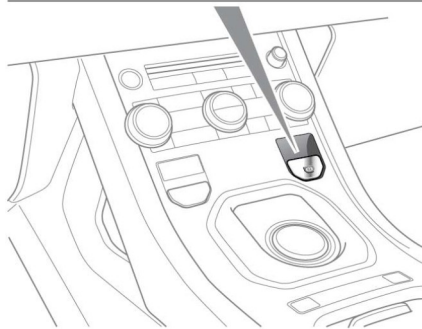
ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

 **Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp is illuminated or the EPB warning lamp is flashing. Seek qualified assistance urgently.**

 The EPB system operates on the rear wheels. Therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

 Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.

Note: If the vehicle is used in severe off-road conditions (e.g. wading, deep mud, etc.), extra maintenance and adjustment of the EPB will be required. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for more information.



1. With the ignition turned on, depress the brake pedal, then press down and release the EPB switch. This will release the EPB.


2. With the vehicle stationary, pull up and release the EPB switch. This will apply the EPB. The parking brake warning lamp will illuminate to indicate that the parking brake is applied. See **44, PARKING BRAKE (RED)**.

If the system detects a fault while the EPB is operating, the red parking brake warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a warning in the Message centre.

If the system detects a fault with the EPB system, the amber brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning in the Message centre. See **44, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

Note: The red parking brake warning lamp will continue to be illuminated for at least ten seconds after the ignition has been turned off.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

 Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied, or repeated use of the parking brake to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), pulling up on the EPB switch and holding, gives a gradual reduction in the speed. The brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning tone and a warning message in the Message centre. The stop lamps will illuminate. See **43, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is fully closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

To delay the automatic release, hold the EPB switch in the applied position and release it at the desired point. The EPB system gradually releases to assist in a smooth drive away.

Brakes

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The EPB is automatically applied when Park (**P**) is selected.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission is engaged in Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**), depressing the accelerator pedal will release the EPB and allow the vehicle to move off.

Note: *At the start of a journey, EPB release times may be extended when changing from **P** or Neutral (**N**). This is to allow for increased gear engagement times.*

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB will automatically release to allow a smooth drive away.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The EPB will be applied automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

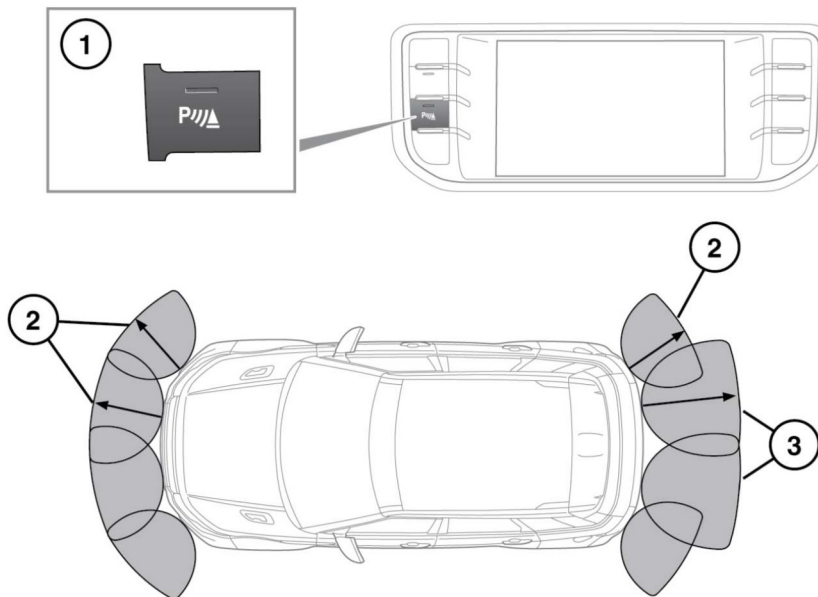
To prevent this automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

If the vehicle is stationary with the engine running and the EPB applied, pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the clutch pedal to engage a gear, will release the EPB automatically and allow the vehicle to move off.

Note: *Automatic release will only operate in first, second and reverse gears.*

Parking aids

USING THE PARKING AID



E156868

1. Parking aid button.
2. Parking aid front and rear sensor detection range is approximately 1200 mm (47 inches).
3. Parking aid rear sensor detection range is approximately 1800 mm (71 inches).

⚠ Parking aids may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring and always use your mirrors.

⚠ The Parking aid sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example narrow posts or small objects close to the ground.

⚠ If accessories, e.g., tow bar, are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.

Note: If a trailer is connected to a Land Rover approved trailer socket, the rear sensors will be disabled.

To enable the Parking aid system, press the Parking aid button (1) while the vehicle is moving forward. The button indicator will illuminate to confirm.

To disable the Parking aid system, press the Parking aid button again. The button indicator will extinguish to confirm.

The Parking aid system will remain off until reverse gear is selected, or the system is manually enabled again while the vehicle is moving forward.

Parking aids

The Parking aid system is automatically activated when reverse gear is selected.

The Parking aid system assists the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front and rear of the vehicle will be displayed in the Touch screen.

Note: *If the system does not detect an object likely to come into close proximity with the vehicle, it will not display any tracking information in the Touch screen.*

When in reverse gear, both the front and rear sensors are active, when in a forward gear, only the front sensors are active.

When objects are detected, the Parking aid system will emit a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to an object. The tone becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm (12 inches).

Note: *The warning tone will stop when the distance between the vehicle and the object remains constant.*

The Parking aid system operates at speeds up to 16 km/h (10 mph).

CLEANING THE SENSORS

⚠ When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

The sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

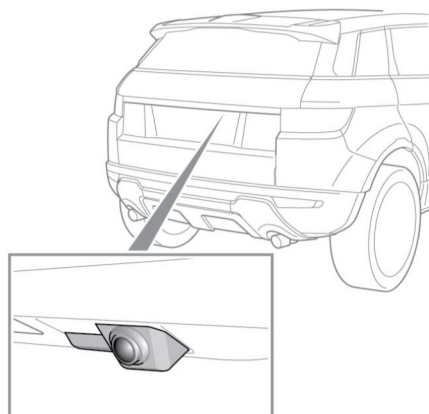
PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound, the switch indicator will flash. Also a graphic and the message **Parking Aid is not available. Please consult your dealer** will be displayed on the Touch screen. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

REAR CAMERA

⚠ It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.

ⓘ Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.



E153429

When reverse gear is selected, the screen automatically displays a wide angle, colour image from the rear of your vehicle.

The rear view camera system provides a rear view image to assist in reversing the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guidelines.

Parking aids

Note: The rear view images and menu options are dependent on the specification of the rear view camera fitted to the vehicle.

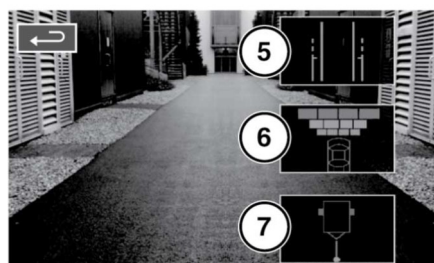
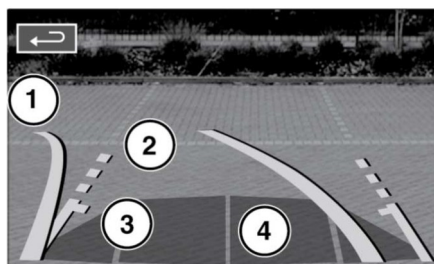
To adjust the camera settings while in reverse, touch anywhere on the Touch screen to display the user options or select **Extra features**, from the Home menu, touch **Cameras** and select **Settings**.

Note: A camera icon will be displayed on the user options screen, when selected from **Extra features**. Touch the camera icon, to return to the rear view camera screen.

Note: The rear camera display has priority over the Parking aids display. To cancel the camera display at any time, push the **Home Menu** button or touch the back soft key.

Rear view camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

- A forward gear is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- A forward gear is selected and/or vehicle speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

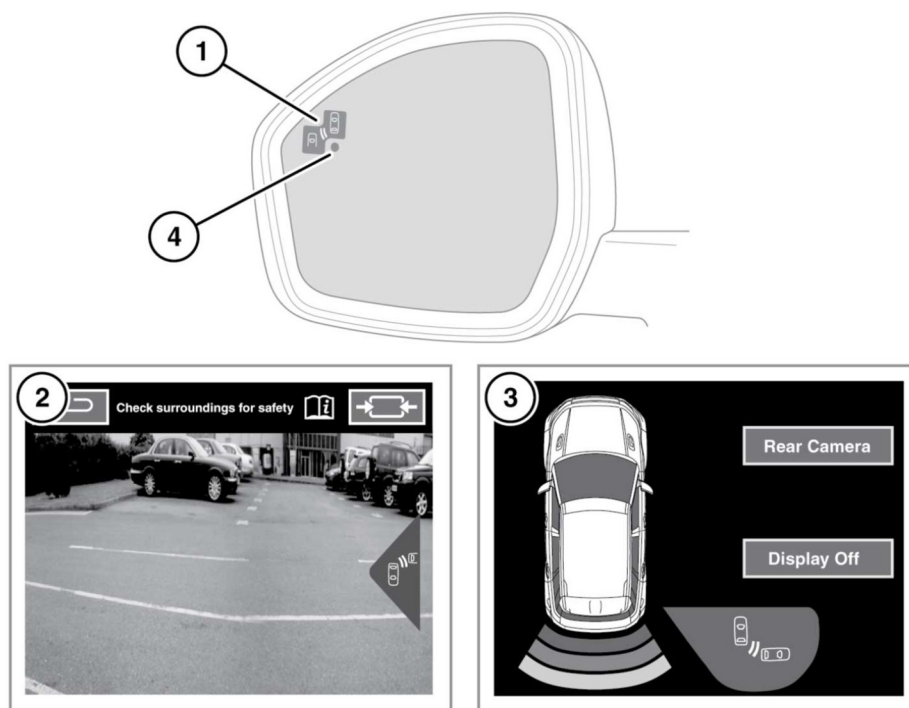


E153094

1. Solid line: The projected path based on current steering wheel position.
2. Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including exterior mirrors).
3. Tailgate access guideline: Do not reverse beyond this point if tailgate access is required.
4. Parking sensor activation: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
5. Touch to enable/disable (1), (2) and (3).
6. Touch to enable/disable the Parking sensor (4).
7. Touch to enable/disable Hitch assist guidance lines. (5) and (6) will be disabled when the Hitch assist guidance is active.

Parking aids

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION



5154980



The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.

Note: RTD is automatically disabled when a trailer is connected and when Park assist is active.

In addition to the functionality provided by the rear view camera, the RTD system provides a warning to the driver of any moving vehicle, at either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.

An amber warning icon (1) will flash in the relevant exterior mirror and an audible warning will be emitted to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. The rear view camera screen (2) or the parking aid screen (3) will also show a warning on the relevant side(s) of the screen. To switch between the rear view camera and the parking aid screen, touch the camera image or the **Rear camera** icon accordingly.

The system can be enabled or disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. When RTD is disabled, an amber dot (4) will be displayed in both exterior mirrors.

Parking aids

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION SENSORS

The RTD system will automatically disable if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** appears in the Message centre.

Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud and dirt.

If a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on 1 side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Park assist

SELECTING PARK ASSIST

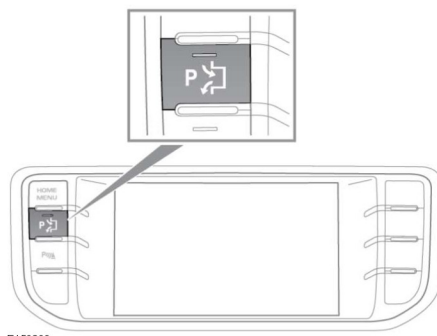
Park assist is an aid to manoeuvring the vehicle in and out of parking spaces.

The system consists of 3 options.

- Parallel park assist: For a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.

Note: A kerb or road edge marking is not required as the system will align to a vehicle or object at the front.

- Perpendicular park assist: For a parking space that is at 90° to the vehicle.
- Park out: For exiting a parallel parking space.



E153239

A short press of the Park assist button will switch on the Park assist system. Further presses will scroll through the Park assist options. To switch off the system, repeatedly press until the LED on the button extinguishes.



Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring and always use your mirrors.



Park assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.



Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g. narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, mesh fences and, in some circumstances, bicycles or motor cycles parked alongside the kerb.



All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.



Park assist must not be used if:

- A temporary spare wheel is in use.
- A sensor is damaged or the bumper is damaged sufficiently to affect a sensor mounting point.
- A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, a trailer, stickers, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle perimeter, for example a trailer.

Note: All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed.

Note: During any Park assist manoeuvre, the Parking aid system will remain active and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.

Note: A parking manoeuvre can be cancelled at any point by holding/turning the steering wheel or by pressing the Park assist button.

Park assist

Note: In a situation where the rows of parked vehicles on either side of the road are close enough for Park assist to sense them and Park assist determines that there is not enough manoeuvring space for reverse parking, the space will be rejected, even if the driver believes the space is large enough to park the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch off the Park assist and to attempt the parking manoeuvre manually.

PARK ASSIST

Park assist is an aid to parking in tight parking bays or spaces. To activate, press the Park assist button until the required option is selected.

1. The Park assist display will appear in the Message centre, with a **Searching** message. All Park assist messages are displayed in the Message centre. Take action when the text or audio alerts an instruction.

As the vehicle is driven forwards, the size of potential parking spaces is assessed.

Note: When first activated, Park assist searches for a space on the passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction.

Note: For Park assist to search effectively, maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m (1.6 ft to 4.9 ft) between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles/obstacles in which the vehicle is to park.

Note: Auto searching is active when the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When Park assist is activated, a previous space may already have been located. To obtain a previous space on the other side, signal a turn in that direction.

2. A short confirmation tone is given when a suitable space is found and the message **Space found** will be displayed. Next, the message **Drive forward** or **Stop! and release wheel** will be given, depending on the vehicle's current position.
3. When the vehicle is at a standstill, an instruction to **Select R and await next instruction** will be given. The Park assist system will then take control of the vehicle's steering. The steering wheel must be released. Release the foot brake carefully to move the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Follow the instructions in the Message centre.



The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout the parking manoeuvre.

Note: If the steering wheel is manually turned during the parking manoeuvre, Park assist will deactivate.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, Park assist will display a message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph) Park assist will deactivate.

4. If further manoeuvring is required in the parking space, further instructions will be displayed in the Message centre. Follow the instructions.
5. When the parking manoeuvre is complete, the message **STOP! Park assist finished** will be displayed and the Park assist system will no longer control the steering.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Park assist

PARK OUT

Park out is an aid to manoeuvring out of tight parallel parking spaces. For the system to operate correctly, the vehicle must be parked in a space with another vehicle in front of it.

To activate, press the Park assist button until the required option is selected.

1. The Park assist display will appear in the Message centre, with an **Enough space to exit** message. All Park assist messages are displayed in the Message centre. Take action when the text or audio alerts an instruction.
2. **Release wheel, measuring...** will appear. The steering wheel must be released.
3. An instruction to **Select D and await next instruction** will be given. The Park assist system will then take control of the vehicle's steering. Release the foot brake carefully to move the vehicle slowly out of the parking space. Follow the instructions in the Message centre.

⚠ The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout the manoeuvre.

⚠ Do not move the vehicle until the **Drive forward with care** message appears.

Note: If the steering wheel is manually turned during the manoeuvre, Park assist will deactivate.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 6 km/h (4 mph) during the manoeuvre, Park assist will display a message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 6 km/h (4 mph). If the vehicle's speed is not reduced Park assist will deactivate.

4. If further manoeuvring is required to exit the parking space, further instructions will be displayed in the Message centre. Follow the instructions.

5. When the manoeuvre is complete, the message **Stop and take wheel. Park assist finished** will be displayed and the Park assist system will no longer control the steering.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS



Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. It is the driver's responsibility, at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.

Park assist may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking spaces changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.
- The vehicle has been fitted with non approved wheels or tyres or there is significant tyre wear.
- 1 of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flat bed, snow plough or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or curve.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining or snowing.
- The road surface is bumpy such as gravel.

Park assist

- A tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- A trailer is connected.

Note: *If a trailer is connected to a Land Rover approved trailer socket, the Park assist system will be disabled.*

- It encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- It encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- It encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.

- The approach angle may not be suitable.

Park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space

One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **103, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Park assist is not searching for a parking space

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling at a speed above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.

Park assist does not offer a certain parking space

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.
- The space may not be large enough or there may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven too far away (more than 1.5 metres [5 feet]) from a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven too close (within 41 cm [16 inches]) to a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in reverse. Park assist will only search for a parking space when the vehicle is travelling in a forward direction.

Cruise control

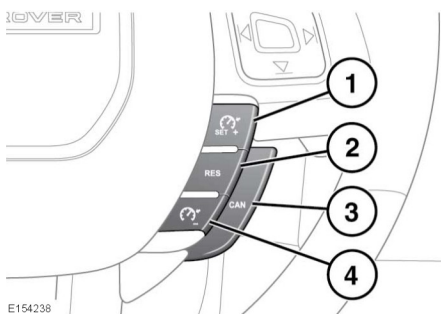
USING CRUISE CONTROL



In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed. Driver intervention may be required.

Note: Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control (HDC) or when a Terrain Response special program has been selected, except for the Grass/Gravel/Snow program.

Note: Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.



1. **SET+:** Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed. The cruise control warning lamp will illuminate to confirm cruise control is operational. See **46, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.

The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

Note: Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).

2. **RES:** Press to resume the set speed.



RES should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

3. **CAN:** Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.

Cruise control will also be cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to neutral, or if HDC or Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) are activated.

4. Press to decrease the set speed.

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Note: If the accelerator pedal is pressed to override Cruise control for a period of more than 5 minutes, Cruise control will be cancelled.

Adaptive cruise control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is designed to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. A speed may be set at between 32 km/h (20 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). The set speed will be displayed in the Message centre.

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle, using engine control and the brakes.

⚠ ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, ACC will not react to:

- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

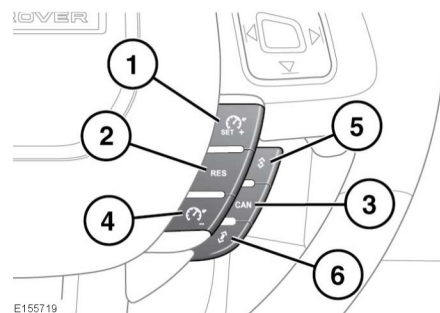
The ACC system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle to detect objects ahead.

The radar sensor is mounted at the front of the vehicle behind the duct in the lower cooling aperture, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

- Use ACC only when conditions are favourable, i.e. main roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles or areas shared with pedestrians.
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the drivers responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the radar sensor from operating.

USING ACC

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by the use of the brake or accelerator pedals.



1. Press to set the vehicle's current speed as the set speed. The ACC warning lamp will illuminate to confirm ACC is operational. See **46, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**. While ACC is enabled, further pressing of the button will raise the set speed above the vehicle's current speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually increase to reach the new set speed.
2. **RES**: Press to resume the ACC set speed after it has been disengaged.
3. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.
4. Press to decrease the set speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually decrease to reach the new set speed.
5. Press to decrease the Follow mode gap. See **107, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
6. Press to increase the Follow mode gap.

Adaptive cruise control

ENTERING FOLLOW MODE



When in Follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

Note: Follow mode is an integral function of ACC. You cannot disengage Follow mode and still use Cruise control to maintain your speed.

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed will be maintained.

If a vehicle ahead enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, your vehicle speed will adjust automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the gap setting. The vehicle is now in **follow mode**.

The Follow mode warning lamp will illuminate to confirm Follow mode is operational (see **45, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**).

The Message centre will display the gap set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle will then maintain the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle brakes will be automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by ACC is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note: Driver braking will cancel ACC.

If ACC predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, then an audible warning will sound while ACC continues to brake.

DRIVER INTERVENE will be displayed in the Message centre. Take immediate action.

When in follow mode, the vehicle will automatically return to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.
- You change lane to either side or enter an exit lane.

The driver should intervene if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, ACC will reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap will be restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if ACC detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP



It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

4 gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the Message centre when the gap adjustment buttons are operated.

Each gap is indicated by an additional bar in front of the vehicle icon in the Message centre. After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) will be automatically selected ready for ACC operation.

If the Terrain Response, Grass-Gravel-Snow mode is selected, then the longest gap (gap 4) will initially be selected.

Adaptive cruise control

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC by depressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

The set speed and gap can be overridden by depressing the accelerator pedal while cruising at a constant speed or in Follow mode. If the vehicle is in Follow mode when the ACC is overridden, the Follow mode warning lamp will go out and **CRUISE OVERRIDE** will be displayed in the Message centre. When the accelerator is released, the ACC function will operate again and the vehicle speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if Follow mode is active.

QUEUE ASSIST

Queue assist is an enhancement of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and, when active, will follow a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on major roads where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, Queue assist will bring the vehicle to a stop and hold it stationary.

While the vehicle is held stationary, Queue assist will request the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

- The driver cancels Queue assist.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 2 minutes.
- Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
- A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator will resume ACC operation.

At very low speed Queue assist may stop for stationary objects, e.g., when the vehicle ahead changes lane to reveal a stationary object. The vehicle radar cannot always distinguish between a stationary vehicle and a fixed object like a road sign, drain cover or temporary barrier. This may cause unexpected braking or cancellation and the driver should intervene if appropriate.

ACC AUTO OFF

ACC will disengage, but not clear the memory when:

- The **CANCEL** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- Certain Terrain Response modes are selected, i.e. Sand and Mud ruts.
- The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the set speed is too great.
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period, i.e. more than 5 minutes. See **108, OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE**.
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached.
- Maximum engine revolution speed is reached. 5000 rpm for a diesel engine and 7000 rpm for a petrol engine.

ACC will disengage, and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the ACC system.

Adaptive cruise control

RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RES** button after ACC has been cancelled (e.g. after braking), ACC will become active again provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed will be resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes the Follow mode to become active) and the set speed will be displayed in the Message centre. Queue assist may be resumed above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set Follow mode gap. A closer set gap will promote greater acceleration.

Note: When resuming a set speed while in a curve, acceleration is reduced. A more severe curve will reduce acceleration further. Remember that ACC and Queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ACC

During some situations ACC may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible alarm will sound, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the Message centre if ACC detects:

- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum ACC braking only is not sufficient.

Note: ACC only operates when the gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**).

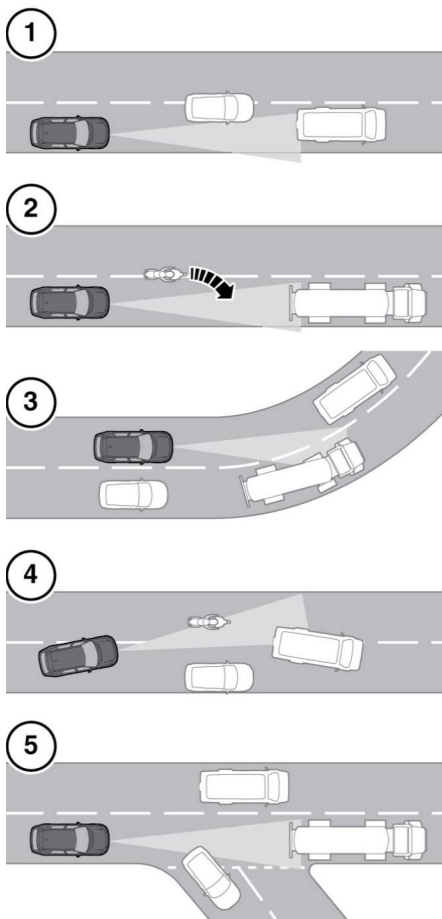
Note: When engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal ACC operation.

Note: When braking is applied by ACC, the vehicle brake lamps will illuminate.

Note: When Intelligent stop/start is fitted, it may operate during a Queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.

Adaptive cruise control

DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



E142911

Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into your lane. The vehicle will only be detected once it has moved fully into your lane.

3. There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of your lane. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations ACC may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

ACC MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs while ACC or Follow mode is operational, ACC will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the Message centre and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**.

If a fault with ACC or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** will be displayed. It will not be possible to activate ACC in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit ACC operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect ACC operation.

If this occurs in ACC cruise /Follow mode, the audible alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly. The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will then be displayed.

Note: The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Adaptive cruise control

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when ACC is inactive (e.g. on initial starting or with ACC switched off), the message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will be displayed.

Tyres other than those recommended for your vehicle may have different circumferences. This can affect the correct operation of ACC.

FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION



The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.



Forward alert uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control. The same performance limitations apply, see 106, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.

Forward alert can be enabled/disabled via the Driver information centre menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The warning lamp in the Instrument panel illuminates when Forward alert is enabled. See **46, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

Forward alert provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead while the vehicle is moving forwards. If a vehicle or object ahead is within the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone will sound and the **FORWARD ALERT** message will be displayed in the Message centre. Emergency brake assist will be activated. See **93, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**

The driver must take appropriate action immediately.

Sensitivity of the function can be adjusted only when Adaptive cruise control is disengaged. Adjust as follows:

- Using the steering wheel Adaptive cruise control buttons, press the gap decrease button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to decrease the sensitivity of the alert.
- Press the gap increase button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to increase the sensitivity of the alert.

FWD ALERT <----> is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *The Forward alert set gap is retained when the ignition is switched off.*

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST



The system may not react to slow moving vehicles and will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.



Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large (e.g. to avoid a collision).



The system utilises the same radar sensor as Advanced cruise control and Forward alert - the same limitations of performance apply.

When Adaptive cruise control is fitted, Advanced emergency brake assist is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph) and will function even if Forward alert and Adaptive cruise control are switched off. It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.





Adaptive cruise control

If the risk of collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, Advanced emergency brake assist is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See 93, **EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

Note: Braking performance will only be improved if the driver applies the brakes.

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without Advanced emergency brake assistance. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault rectified.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING

-  The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.
-  The system will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as your vehicle.
-  Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).
-  Intelligent emergency braking uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control and Forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See 106, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.

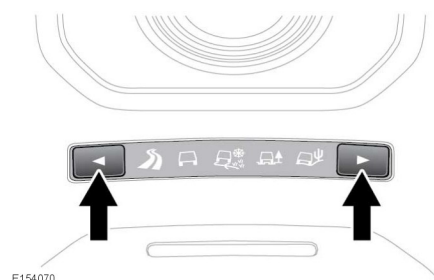
When Adaptive cruise control is fitted, Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) is available at all speeds and will function even if Adaptive cruise control and Forward alert are switched off. The purpose of IEB is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB will apply the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the Message centre and the system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain for example, or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Terrain response

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION



Before venturing off-road, it is essential that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the Terrain Response system. Basic guidance for off-road driving can be found in the Land Rover Off-Road Driving handbook. This is a free download at: www.ownerinfo.landrover.com. Information relating to the suitability of each Terrain Response programme on different types of surface can be found in the **4x4i** section of the **Extra features** menu. **69, EXTRA FEATURES.**

Terrain Response selection is via the centre console buttons, as illustrated. Use the buttons to move through the program selections. The currently selected program icon will be displayed in the Message centre and the relevant LED indicator will illuminate.

Note: Changing between the special programs will alter various vehicle settings, e.g., engine revs while at the current accelerator pedal position may alter, or the steering feel might change. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.

It is advisable to experiment with the available settings in an environment that will not affect other road users.

GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)



This program is compatible with all on and off-road conditions. If not already active, it should be selected before driving on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. Dry cobbles, tarmac, dry wooden planks, etc., all fall into this category.

This program should be selected once the need for a special program has passed. Once the special program has been deselected, all of the vehicle's systems will return to their normal settings except for HDC. HDC will remain active if it was selected manually.

This general program also allows the Active Driveline system (if fitted) to automatically switch between 2 wheel drive and 4 wheel drive, dependent on driving conditions. This status can be viewed in the **4x4i** section of the **Extra features** menu.

Note: Permanent 4 wheel drive is maintained in all other Terrain Response programs.

GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW



This program should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material.

Note: For deep snow and gravel it is recommended that the Sand program is selected.

Note: If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in deep snow, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome.

Terrain response

MUD-RUTS



This program should be used for crossing terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft or uneven.

SAND



This program should be used for terrain which is predominantly soft dry sand or deep gravel.

Note: If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in extremely soft, dry sand, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome.

If the sand to be crossed is damp/wet, and sufficiently deep to cause the wheels to sink into the surface, the Mud-Ruts program should be used.

DYNAMIC



This program is associated with a driving style, rather than a type of terrain and optimises traction, handling and driveability, for maximum feedback and responsiveness. Select this program to exploit the vehicle's full on-road potential.

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) is automatically engaged for some Terrain Response programs. If required, HDC can be deselected or engaged independently of Terrain Response. See **115, HDC CONTROLS**.

The HDC status will be displayed in the Message centre whether it is engaged, or disengaged, by the system or by the driver.

Although Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is automatically engaged when a special program is selected, it can be turned off if required. See **90, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES



Use of an incorrect program will impair the vehicle's response to the terrain and can reduce the life of the suspension and drive systems.

If the system becomes partially inoperable for any reason, it may not be possible to select a special program.

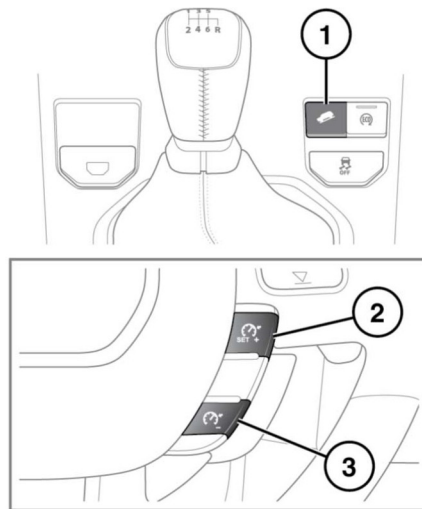
If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the General program will be automatically selected. Once the system returns to normal operation, the previously active program will be reactivated unless the ignition has been turned off in the mean time.

If you try to select an inappropriate special programme, the relevant indicator will flash amber and the Message centre will provide further information. If the appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings will cease and the Message centre will show the active program.

If the system becomes completely inoperable, all of the special program indicators will be switched off and a relevant message will be displayed in the Message centre.

Hill descent control (HDC)

HDC CONTROLS



E154101

Hill Descent Control (HDC) is designed to restrict the vehicle's speed to a set limit when travelling downhill.

Hill descent control (HDC)



Do not attempt a steep descent if HDC is inoperative or warning messages are displayed.

1. HDC on/off: HDC can be selected at any speed, but will only operate at speeds less than 50 km/h (31 mph).

For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the HDC can be used in Drive (**D**), Reverse (**R**) and all the CommandShift™ gears. When in **D**, the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, the HDC can be used in 1st, 2nd and reverse gears.

Note: HDC is automatically selected by some of the Terrain Response special programs.

Note: HDC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.

If the system operation criteria have not been met, the HDC warning lamp will flash to indicate that the system has been selected but is not operating. See **46, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)**.

A graphic will also be displayed in the Message centre showing the HDC target speed. When HDC is unable to operate, the display will be grey. The graphic indicates the range of target speeds available in the currently selected gear.

If HDC is deselected while operating, the warning lamp will extinguish and the system will fade out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.

If HDC is already selected and the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph), HDC is suspended. The HDC indicator will flash and a message will appear in the Message centre.

If the brake pedal is pressed when HDC is

active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC will resume.

2. Increase the descent speed: The Cruise control (+) button will increase the HDC descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Press and hold the (+) button for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible target speed.

Note: Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.

Note: The vehicle's speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Use of the (+) switch may therefore not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.

3. Decrease the descent speed: The Cruise control (-) button will decrease the HDC descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Press and hold the (-) button for larger incremental increases, down to the minimum permissible target speed.

Note: Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.

If a fault is detected in the HDC system, **HDC FAULT SYSTEM NOT AVAILABLE** will appear in the Message centre and HDC assistance will fade out.

If the fault is detected while the system is operating, HDC assistance will fade out. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Hill descent control (HDC)

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

With HDC activated, if the vehicle is stopped on a slope using the foot brake, GRC will become active (except in the Terrain Response Sand program). During a hill ascent when the foot brake is released GRC will automatically delay and graduate the brake release, to allow the vehicle to move smoothly away. When descending a hill, a similar brake hold and gradual release is employed to provide a smooth transition into HDC control.

GRC operates in forward and reverse gears and requires no driver intervention.

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

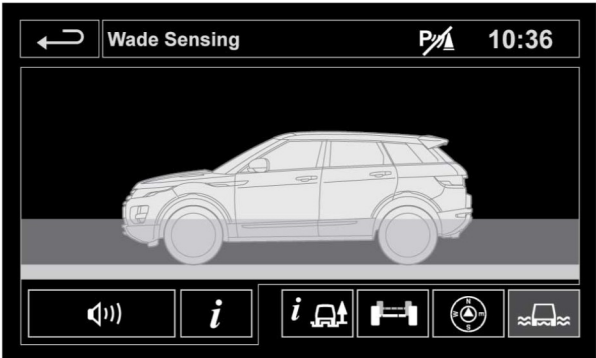
In extreme circumstances, the HDC system may cause brake temperatures to exceed their preset limits. If this occurs the warning **HDC TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed in the Message centre. HDC will then fade out and become temporarily inactive.

Once the brakes have reached an acceptable temperature, the message will disappear (or the warning lamp will extinguish) and HDC will, if required, resume operation.

Wade sensing

WADE SENSING CONTROLS

- Wade sensing should not be used during off-road driving as rapid increases in water depth cannot be detected in time to deliver a warning message to the driver.
- When entering water from a steep gradient, the water level may rise rapidly.
- The Wade sensing system cannot detect the true level of water if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface.
- Parking aid will not operate when Wade sensing is active.
- The wade sensing sensors are located on the underside of the exterior mirrors. The sensors and the area below the sensors must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud and other debris. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation.
- If the exterior mirrors are in the fold position, Wade sensing will operate but will give false readings.



:154088

Note: The exterior mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position when using the Wade sensing system.

Wade sensing aids the driver while driving through water. Wade sensing can be turned on and off from the Touch screen **4x4i** or **Extra Features** menus. When selected, the Touch screen will display current water depth and the maximum wading depth. The system will warn the driver as the maximum depth for wading approaches. Warnings take the form of messages on the Touch screen, the Instrument panel, and a series of warning tones.

If system limitations are exceeded, the Touch screen view will grey out and the water depth will not be displayed.

Wade sensing is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), or the gradient exceeds 10°. Wade sensing will automatically reactivate if the vehicle's speed drops back down to 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds, Wade sensing will automatically switch off.

Wade sensing

Note: Wade sensing will not operate if the vehicle is fitted with fixed side steps. However, the system will operate with side tubes or deployable side steps if they are in the retracted position.

Note: The Parking aid, Park assist and Intelligent stop/start systems are all disabled when Wade sensing is operating.

Driving aids

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION



The Traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Traffic sign recognition system.

The Traffic sign recognition system uses the forward facing camera, located in the base of the rear view mirror, which detects speed signs, no overtaking signs and variable overhead speed signs to display symbols of the detected signs in the Message centre. Traffic signs with extra information (for example, reduced speed limits for wet road conditions) will also be detected and compared with the vehicle's systems (for example, rain sensor, wipers, etc.) and may also be displayed in the Message centre. Speed limit information from the Navigation system will be displayed for roads with no signage.

Note: If the Navigation is not available, the Traffic sign recognition system will use the camera only.

Note: Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear view mirror is kept clean and free of debris, for example, mud, snow, ice, etc.

The Traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu from the Instrument panel. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The system will operate up to a maximum speed of 250 km/h (155 mph).

The 3 basic functions of the Traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- Speed limit detection. A corresponding sign will be displayed in the Message centre.
- Speed alert. When the vehicle's speed is greater than (or equal to) the detected speed limit, a flashing red ring, around the displayed speed limit sign, will be displayed in the Message centre.

Speed alert can be switched on/off or the settings can be adjusted to display at 3 different settings:

- When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.
- When the vehicle's speed is 5 mph or 10 km/h above the detected speed limit. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- When the vehicle's speed is 10 mph or 20 km/h above the detected speed limit. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- No overtaking zone. When a no overtaking sign has been detected, the system will also display a corresponding sign in the Message centre.

Note: The Traffic sign recognition system will not detect road markings or situations with no signage, for example railway crossings, etc.

Traffic sign recognition limitations

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- Travelling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Concealed or covered signage.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.

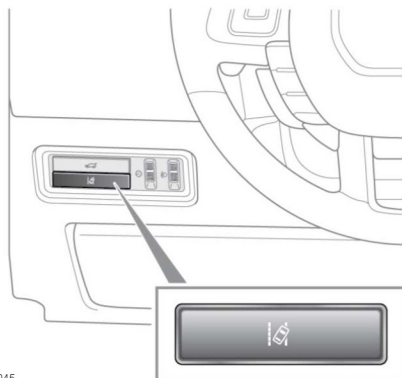
Driving aids

- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Navigation information is incorrect.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the Navigation system.
- Non-conforming road signs.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING



The Lane departure warning system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Lane departure warning system.



E158045

Press the button to disable/enable the Lane departure warning system.

When enabled, an indicator lamp will illuminate in the Message centre to confirm. The status of the system is also shown by the changes of the lane icon colours and the vehicle position icon within the indicator lamp.

The Lane departure warning system can also be switched off/on via the **Vehicle Set-up** Instrument panel menu. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: When the ignition is switched on, the Lane departure warning system will remain at the previous on or off status and also retain the previous settings.

The Lane departure warning system uses the forward facing camera, located in the base of the rear view mirror.

Note: Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear view mirror is kept clean and free of debris, for example, mud, snow, ice, etc.

If the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate indicator, then the Lane departure warning system will alert the driver via one of the methods below:

- Steering wheel vibration (haptic feedback).
- Graphical displays in the Message centre.

Note: The Lane departure warning system will only provide warnings to the driver. It will not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle or operate any of the vehicle's systems.

Note: The Lane departure warning system will not detect unmarked edges of the road.

The sensitivity of the Lane departure warning system can be adjusted between **HIGH** or **NORMAL** via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu in the Instrument panel menu.

When set at **NORMAL** sensitivity, the Lane departure warning system will suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected, as listed below:

- Operation of the accelerator pedal.
- Significant movement of the steering wheel.
- Operation of the brakes.

Driving aids

- Activation of the appropriate indicator.
- Driving very close to another vehicle.

When set at **HIGH** sensitivity, the Lane departure warning system will not suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected (unless the appropriate indicator is activated).

If the Lane departure warning system detects a fault or is not available, then the General warning/information message (amber) will be displayed in the Message centre. See **43**, **GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Lane departure warning limitations

- When set at **HIGH** sensitivity, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 50 km/h and 180 km/h or 30 mph and 112 mph .
Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- When set at **NORMAL** sensitivity, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 60 km/h and 180 km/h or 40 mph and 112 mph. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- The lane in use must be wider than 2.5 m (8.2 ft).
- No warning given if the correct indicator is active.
- Not active in off-road conditions.
- Not available when the sand or mud-ruts, Terrain Response programs are selected.

The performance of the Lane departure warning system may also be affected in the following conditions:

- Adverse driving conditions. For example heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Worn, damaged or temporary lane markings, for example road works, etc.
- Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.

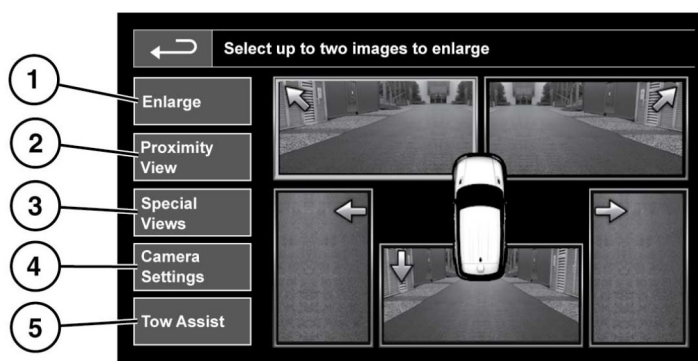
Cameras

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.

For information on the rear view camera, see 97, REAR CAMERA.



E151119

The camera home page is accessed by using the Touch screen **Home menu**. Select **Extra features**, then select **Cameras** and then select the camera icon.

1. **Enlarge**: To enlarge a camera view, touch the image, then touch the **Enlarge** icon. Any 2 images can be selected and enlarged to view side-by-side on the screen.

When viewing the 2 images, one of them can be selected to view as a full screen image. It can then be zoomed into and panned around using the magnifier and arrow icons.

2. **Proximity View**: Touch to select a combination of 3 images from the front and passenger side cameras.

Automatic Proximity View: When a forward or a reverse gear is selected, the forward or rear view will be displayed. Once the vehicle's speed exceeds 18 km/h (11 mph) or the return icon is pressed, the camera screen will disappear.

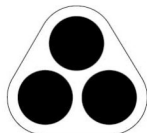
Note: Proximity view can be accessed at any time by touching Proximity View on the camera home page.

3. **Special Views**: Touch to display a selection of preset views. They are provided to assist with difficult manoeuvres and are:
 - **Kerb view**: Shows views from the 2 side cameras.
 - **Junction view**: Shows views from the 2 front cameras.
4. **Camera Settings**: Touch to access the camera options page.
5. **Tow Assist**: Touch to display the trailer guidance set-up screen.

TOW ASSIST

Note: Trailer guidance requires a connected trailer to be fitted with a tracking target sticker, which **must** be attached according to specific instructions. Ask your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for details.

Cameras



E134952

Note: This feature may not operate with all trailer designs.

Trailer guidance aids trailer reversing, by displaying guidelines on the Touch screen.

Trailer guidance becomes active when a trailer/caravan is attached to the vehicle and the trailer's electrical plug is attached to the vehicle's socket.

Note: The driver's door must be opened and closed after the trailer/caravan is connected to the electrical socket before the system will detect the connection.

The screen will display a choice for connection. Select **YES** to move to the setup screen. Select **NO** to return to the previous screen.

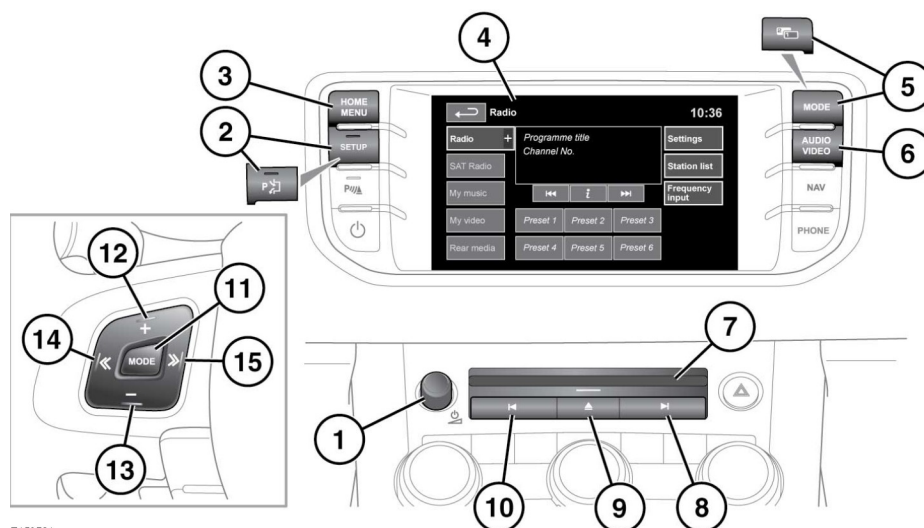
Note: If the connection is not detected, setup can be manually prompted by touching the Tow Assist soft key on the **Camera** menu.

On first use, the setup screens take the user through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. Information such as trailer length, number of axles and camera preference is required to finalise setup. Once completed, the details are stored for future use.

When a new or existing trailer configuration is selected, Trailer guidance automatically displays on the Touch screen when reverse gear is selected. Coloured lines are displayed to indicate the predicted path of both trailer and vehicle.

Audio/video overview

AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS



E153721



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch the audio system on/off.

Note: The audio system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will always switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the audio on again if required.

Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: If volume is turned to zero while a Compact Disc (CD) is playing, the CD will pause play. Play will resume when a greater volume is selected.

2. **SETUP:** Press for direct access to the **Settings** menu. When Park assist is fitted, the icon is changed and the button will turn Park assist on and off. The **Settings** menu is then accessed via the Touch screen.

3. **HOME MENU:** Press for direct access to the **Home menu** screen.

4. Touch screen

5. **MODE:** Press this button repeatedly to scroll through all the audio/video sources. When Dual view is fitted, the button icon is changed and the button will turn Dual view on and off.

6. **AUDIO VIDEO:** Press for direct access to the **Audio/Video** menu.

Audio/Video options can include Radio, DAB Radio, My music, My video and Rear media.

My music consists of CD, Stored CD, MP3, USB, iPod® and AUX.

My video includes CD/DVD, USB, iPod® and TV.

7. CD or Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) loading slot.

Audio/video overview

The player will accommodate 1 disc at a time. With the Stored CD player up to 10 CDs can be uploaded individually to the Stored CD store.

Only discs with CDDA tracks and no other type, can be uploaded to the Stored CD store.

Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The player mechanism will complete the loading.

8. Seek up:

- Short press to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station, to select the next track on chosen audio source CD, MP3 etc or, to select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next DVD chapter.
- Long press to activate radio manual seek mode or, to scan forwards through the current audio source track.

With radio manual seek mode activated, further short presses will change the frequency in single increments. A further long press will scan forwards through the current waveband until the button is released

9. CD/DVD eject button.

10. Seek down:

- Short press to auto seek down the frequency list to the next radio station, to select the previous track or the start of the current track on a chosen audio source CD, MP3 etc or, to select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous DVD chapter.
- Long press to activate the radio manual seek mode or to skip backward through the current audio source track.

With radio manual seek mode activated, further short presses will change the frequency in single decrements. A further long press will scan backward through the current waveband until the button is released.

11. **MODE**: Press this steering wheel button repeatedly to scroll through all the audio/video sources.

12. Press to increase the volume for any source.

13. Press to decrease the volume for any source.

14. Seek down:

- Short press to select the previous radio preset or to select the previous track or start of the current track on a chosen audio source CD, MP3 etc.
When the telephone is in use, press to scroll down the lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- Long press to auto seek down the frequency list to the next radio station.

15. Seek up:

- Short press to select the next radio preset or to select the next track on a chosen audio source CD, MP3 etc.
When the telephone is in use, press to scroll up the lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- Long press to auto seek up the frequency list to the next radio station.

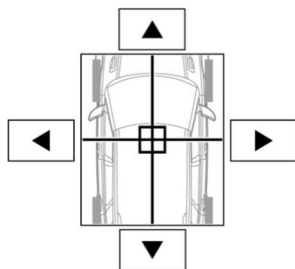
AUDIO SETTINGS

To view the **Audio settings** menu, select **Setup** from the Touch screen **Home menu** and then select **Audio**.

To adjust the sound settings, touch the **Tone** soft key. Touch the **+** or **-** soft keys to adjust Bass, Treble or Subwoofer levels.

Audio/video overview

To adjust the balance and fade settings, touch the **Balance/Fade** soft key.



E153722

Touch the arrow soft keys to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and 'drag' it to the required position.

To adjust the surround sound settings, touch the **Meridian**, **DPLIIx** or **DTS Neo:6** soft keys to select **2D surround**. Select **Stereo** to switch **2D surround** off.

Note: Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.

LOADING DISCS

- ⓘ Do not force the disc into the slot.
- ⓘ Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs and those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.
- ⓘ The CD unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification. Playback of CDs not conforming to this standard cannot be guaranteed.
- ⓘ Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- ⓘ Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.

- ⓘ Dual format, dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and so playback cannot be guaranteed and jamming may occur.

Use only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC files.

The player will accommodate 1 CD or DVD disc at a time but up to 10 CDs can be uploaded onto the virtual CD store.

Only CDDA discs can be loaded onto the virtual CD store.

LICENSING



E135227



E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132540

Audio/video overview

Manufactured under licence under U.S. Patent #s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535; 7,003,467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under licence under U.S. Patent #s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132543

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under licence.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device setup menu.

1. Follow the route, Home Menu - Audio Video - TV/My video - Settings - VOD.
2. An eight digit code will be displayed. This is your unique DivX code. Make a note of this code and keep it for future reference.

Go to <http://vod.divx.com> with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.



E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

Audio/video overview

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licenced to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

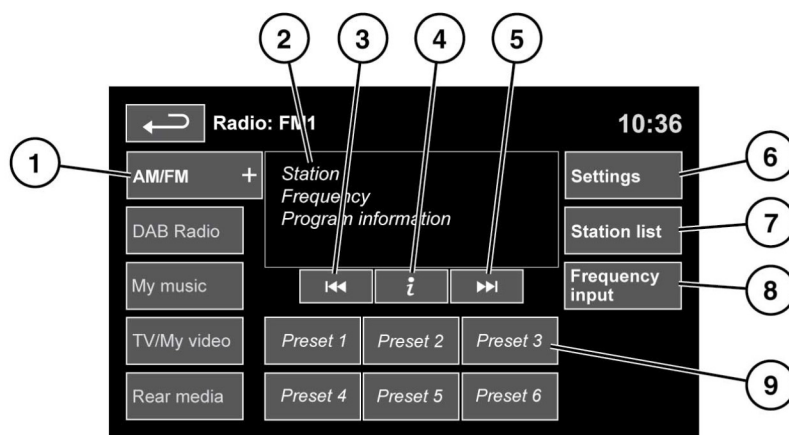
Audio/video overview

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracernote, Inc. 2009

Radio

RADIO CONTROLS



E149957



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **AM/FM**: Waveband selection. Touch to view and select a waveband. The radio will tune to the last used station on that waveband. Touch again to close.
2. Displays information about the current station.
3. Seek down:
 - Short touch to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
 - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single decrements. A further long touch will scan backwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.

Note: When manual seek is selected, auto seek cannot be selected for approximately 10 seconds.

4. Information. More information from the broadcasting station.
5. Seek up:
 - Short touch to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
 - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single increments. A further long touch will scan forwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.
6. **Settings**: Touch to view and activate/deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic**, **News**, **AF** and **REG**. See **132**, **RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.
7. **Station list** (FM only): Select to view a list of available stations on the waveband. The list can be sorted by **Frequency**, **Name** or **PTY** (pop, news, sport etc.) by selecting the appropriate soft key. Touch to select the chosen station.

If the stations are sorted by category, touch the chosen category to view and select a corresponding station.

Radio

8. **Frequency input:** Select to enter a known frequency of a station on the current waveband, using the numeric keypad that appears. Select OK or wait for 2 seconds to tune to the entered frequency.
9. **Station presets:** Each waveband has 6 preset positions.
 - Touch and release to tune to the station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored then beep).
 - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset station.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

Your radio is equipped with RDS which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with normal FM radio signals.

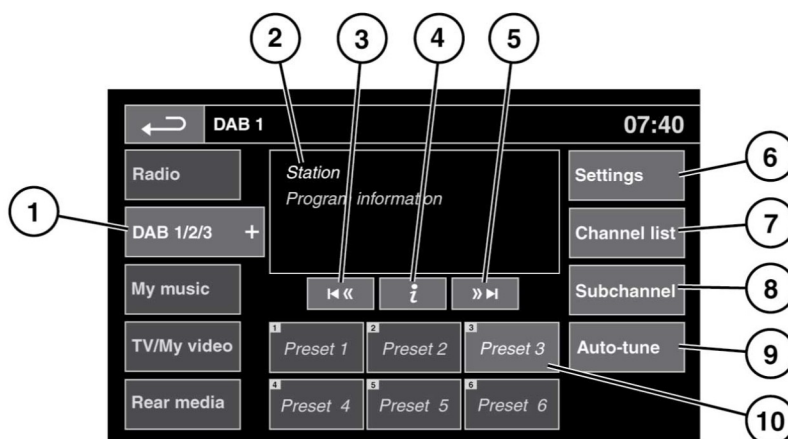
Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

Select **Settings** to view or alter RDS settings.

- **Traffic/News:** Provides local travel or news information.
- **Regionalisation (REG):** Select to prevent the radio tuning into an alternative local station that has a stronger signal.
- **Alternative Frequency (AF):** Select to allow the radio to automatically re-tune to a stronger alternative frequency for the current station. This is useful on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.

DAB radio

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



E151973



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

- 1. DAB 1/2/3:** Touch to view and select a DAB band (**DAB 1**, **2** or **3**). The radio will tune to the last used channel on that band. Touch again to close.
- 2.** Display showing the current channel, the associated Ensemble and relevant DAB radio text.
- 3. Seek down:**
 - Short touch to seek a previous available channel.
 - Long touch to seek the previous available ensemble. The first channel in the new ensemble will be selected.
- 4. Channel information:** Touch to view DAB text and channel information.
- 5. Seek up:**
 - Short touch to find the next available channel.
 - Long touch to find the next available ensemble. The first channel in the new ensemble will be selected.
- 6. Settings:** Touch to view the DAB Settings menu:
 - **Options:** To activate/deactivate FM Traffic and Link DAB and to alter DAB country and format settings (with vehicle stationary).
 - **Announcements:** Select an alarm announcement and up to 3 other announcement types (traffic, news etc.) from the list. The selected announcements will interrupt the current programme when broadcast.

DAB radio

7. **Channel list:** Touch to view a list of available ensembles and channels. The list can be sorted by **Ensemble**, **Channel**, **Subchannel** or by **Category**.

- If an **Ensemble** is selected from the list, all available channels from that ensemble will be displayed.
- Sorting by **Subchannel** is only available when the current channel is broadcasting subchannels.
- If **Category** is selected, touch the chosen category to view corresponding channels, before making your selection from the list.

Once the desired selection has been made, select the Back soft key to return to the main DAB menu.

8. **Subchannel:** If subchannels are broadcast by the current channel, this soft key will be active. Select to allow subchannels then select the required subchannel with the seek down/up keys.

9. **Auto-tune:** Select to scan for all available DAB ensembles/channels. This needs to be done before using the DAB radio for the first time.

Auto-tune is also useful when travelling long distances, so regional Ensembles can be tuned.

During Auto-tune, a pop-up shows tuning progress.

The Auto-tune process will not affect current presets, but some presets may not operate if the channel they relate to is no longer available (**No reception** displays).

10. **Station presets:** Each DAB band has 6 preset positions.

- Touch and release to tune the radio to the station stored on that preset.
- Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored).
- Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to select the next or previous preset station.

Note: If you attempt to select a preset channel that is now unavailable or invalid, **No reception** is displayed.

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **Settings**:

- If the **Link DAB** setting is switched on and the signal strength for a channel falls below an acceptable level, the audio unit will automatically search other available ensembles for a channel with the same name.

If an alternative local channel is found, the new channel is played automatically after a few seconds. If the channel is not found after a few seconds, the message **No reception** is displayed.

The word **Link** is displayed at the top of the Touch screen when **Link DAB** is enabled.

- Select **DAB country** if driving into another country. Scroll through the country options to choose the appropriate one. This will prompt an auto-tune.

Note: This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

DAB radio

- Choose **DAB format** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
 - L Band.
 - Band III.
 - L Band & Band III.
 - L Band Canada.
 - L Band Can & Band III.

This will prompt an auto-tune.

Note: *This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.*

ENSEMBLES

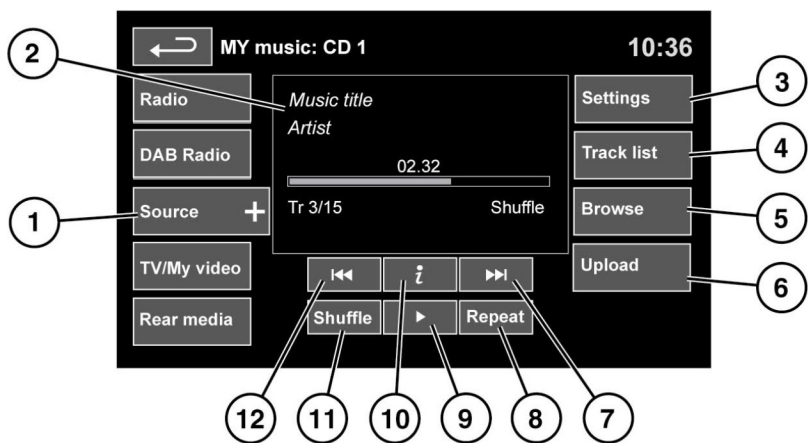
Unlike AM/FM radio, DAB transmits several channels/stations on a single frequency. A group of channels is known as an ensemble. Some channels within the ensemble may have subchannels offering several listening options.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be out of range of the ensemble. To build a new list of ensembles, select **Auto-tune**.

L

Portable media

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E151174



Do not adjust the main audio unit's controls, or allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See 125, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.

My music includes CD, iPod, USB, AUX and Bluetooth® wireless technology devices. The full infotainment system also includes Stored CD.

1. Touch the **Source** icon to display all options. Select an option.
Note: Sound quality and volume levels available from devices connected to the auxiliary input may vary widely.
2. Display of information about the current track, including elapsed run-time. Some of this information is also displayed in the Instrument panel.

Note: Only connected devices that support ID3 shall have the information displayed.

3. **Settings:** Select to switch traffic and news announcements on or off. Additionally, for MP3 recorded media, you can select the number of list entries that are skipped when you use the page up/down arrows when navigating a list.
4. **Track list:** Select to view current CD or Stored CD track list. Select a track to start playback.

Portable media

5. Browse: (iPod, USB and Stored CD modes only).

- Select to view the contents of the connected device which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
- Select a file to start playback (Browse view will remain). Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
- To return to the Controls menu, select the Back soft key.

Note: If the iPhone is connected via a USB cable so that audio can be played or for phone charging, **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices audio is disconnected.

6. Upload: Applicable to Stored CD menu only.

Select to view and manage the CDs loaded onto the CD store.

- Select **Upload** alongside an empty slot to upload the current CD. There are 10 slots available.
- If the CD store is full, select **Replace** to overwrite an existing CD.

In each case a confirmation pop-up will appear. Select **Yes** to continue.

Note: Loading time is dependent on content type. A % count up is displayed. Other features can be selected while upload is in progress.

7. Skip/Scan forward:

- Touch and release to skip to the next track.
- Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track. Play will resume when the soft key is released.

8. Repeat, in CD mode:

- Touch and release to repeat the current track continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat track** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to repeat the current Stored CD (or folder for MP3 discs) continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat disc** or **Repeat folder** is displayed.
- Touch and release a third time to cancel Repeat mode.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle** will cancel Repeat mode, but **Repeat track** can be selected with Shuffle mode active (cancels the previously selected shuffle mode).

Repeat, in USB or iPod mode:

- Select to repeat the current track.
- Select again to repeat the current folder (USB) or to cancel repeat mode (iPod). Select again to cancel repeat mode in USB.

Note: Repeat mode is not available for **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle** will cancel Repeat mode.

9. Pause/Play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.

10. Information: More information about the current track.

Portable media

11. Shuffle:

- Touch and release once to play random tracks from the current CD, MP3 folder, USB folder or iPod playlist. A **Shuffle** message is displayed.
- Touch and release again to play random tracks from CD, MP3 disc, USB folders or tracks on the media device or tracks loaded onto the CD store. **Shuffle all** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to cancel Shuffle mode.

Note: Shuffle mode is not available for **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

12. Skip/Scan backward:

- Touch and release within 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the previous track.
- Touch and release after 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the beginning of the current track.
- Touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track. Playback will resume when the soft key is released.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the cubby box. Rear seat passengers can connect at the rear of the centre console. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Note: Auxiliary devices have no Touch screen control.

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage or **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, use the Touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.



Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: The audio system will play MP3, WMA and AAC files.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

Note: Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: www.landrover.com.

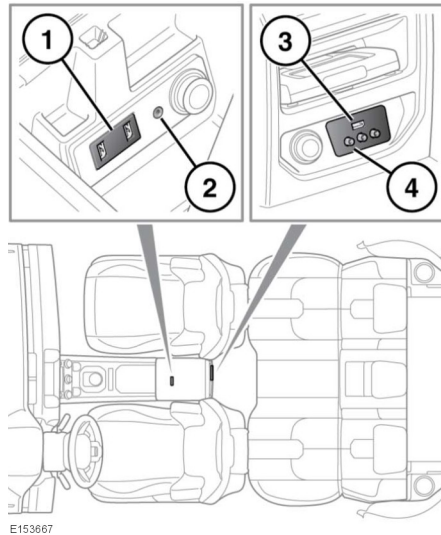
The **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover.

CONNECTING A DEVICE



Always refit the rubber cover when a portable device is not plugged in. This prevents damage to the sockets. The cover is not waterproof.

Portable media



- ❗ Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the audio system. Make sure the device is suitable and complies with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's audio system or the auxiliary device.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

1. USB socket.
2. 3.5 mm AUX socket.
3. Rear media USB/iPod sockets.
4. Rear media AV sockets.

- ❗ Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than 1 USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: In some cases if an iPhone is connected via a USB cable for music and also to a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device for other phone functions, the audio will stream through only the last connected port. For example if a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device is the last connection made to the iPhone and the iPod lead is connected, no audio will be heard through the speakers via the iPod lead. Track title and time information will still be shown on the display. Audio output from the speakers will only be obtained if the user chooses audio mode on the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device. To address this issue disconnect and reconnect your device's USB cable or open the iPod application on the iPhone, select the **Bluetooth** icon and select Dock Connector on the pop up.

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

Note: Options such as **Repeat** and **Mix** relate to the device currently playing, they will not apply to any subsequent device.

The 3.5mm AUX socket allows extra equipment (e.g. personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the audio system.

Note: iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.

Note: On vehicles fitted with Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE), extra Audio/Visual sockets are provided. This allows auxiliary equipment (such as a video game console) to be linked to the rear DVD screens. For fitment information, please refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

Portable media

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or approved iPod, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

If you are using a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

⚠ Land Rover does not recommend the use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

⚠ Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them using the Touch screen. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth** or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device docked first will remain the active device until you choose to change.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, play will resume at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

Note: You cannot use a USB hub to connect more than 1 USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the iPod and USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: Options such as **Repeat** and **Shuffle** relate to the device currently playing, they will not apply to any subsequent device.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see **154, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your media device with the vehicle, using the media device, will vary depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. From the Home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then the **My music +** soft key.
3. Touch **Bluetooth**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
5. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology system is only discoverable for 3 minutes.

6. Using the media device, search for Bluetooth wireless technology devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as new paired device. See your media device's operating instructions for further information.
7. When the vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Either your device or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.
8. Enter the same PIN into the other device.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed, before switching to the **My music, Bluetooth** screen.

Portable media

***Note:** Some media devices do not automatically connect and need to be manually connected, via the device or by using the **Change device** option.*

PORTABLE MEDIA PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see **154, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

1. Switch on your **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device connection. Make sure that it is in **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as 'find me' mode (see your device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch on the ignition and make sure the Touch screen is active.
3. From the Home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then **My Music**.
4. Touch **Bluetooth**.
5. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
6. Select **Vehicle to device** option.
7. Identify your device from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

***Note:** If more than 5 devices are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*

8. When prompted, enter the PIN (Personal Identification Number) code into your device. See your device's operating instructions for more information.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the **My music, Bluetooth** view.

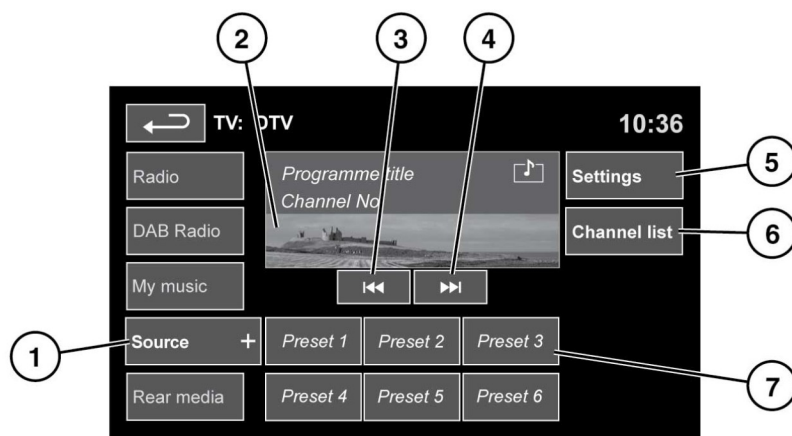
***Note:** Due to the duration of a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device search, it is advised that the time-out to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices. This setting can be changed within **Set-up, Screen, Time out home**.*

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

1. From the **Bluetooth** menu, select **Change device**.
2. Select **Disconnect**. A confirmation pop-up will appear and then you will be given the option to **Search new** or select a different device from the list of paired devices.

Television

TELEVISION CONTROLS



E151176



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **Source**, TV band/video input selection:
 - Touch **Source** to view and select either digital (**DTV 1** or **DTV 2 - Digital**) or analogue (**TV - Analogue**) TV reception, CD/DVD, USB or iPod.
 When changing between analogue and digital bands, this will cause the last tuned channel on the new band to be displayed. When changing between digital bands, the current channel will be displayed.
2. Preview screen for TV programme: Touch to select full screen mode.

Short touch the screen again to view the controls and Electronic Programme Guide (EPG) information at any time.

- **Analogue TV display format:** Use the relevant soft key to select the 4:3, 16:9 or Zoom option.
- **Digital TV display format:** The picture can be displayed in either the correct format as transmitted by the broadcaster (either 4:3 or 16:9) or select Zoom to magnify the picture.

To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.

3. **Seek down:** Select to view the previous channel on the TV channel list.
4. **Seek up:** Select to view the next channel on the TV channel list.
5. **Settings:** Select to switch Traffic and News announcements on or off, to select analogue TV or to select an alternative country analogue TV format, if necessary, when travelling abroad.

Note: Digital TV is not affected by a change of country.

Television

6. Channel list: Select to view an alphabetical list of all TV channels currently available.

- A small preview of the current channel and programme title is also displayed.
- Touch a listed channel to change the preview and title to the new channel.
- Touch the preview to view that channel.

Note: As the TV system is continually checking the availability of channels, it is possible for a channel to be in the list, but not actually available (e.g. when driving through different transmitter regions).

Note: After a country format change, the channel list will be empty until the system has scanned all channels at least once.

7. TV channel presets:

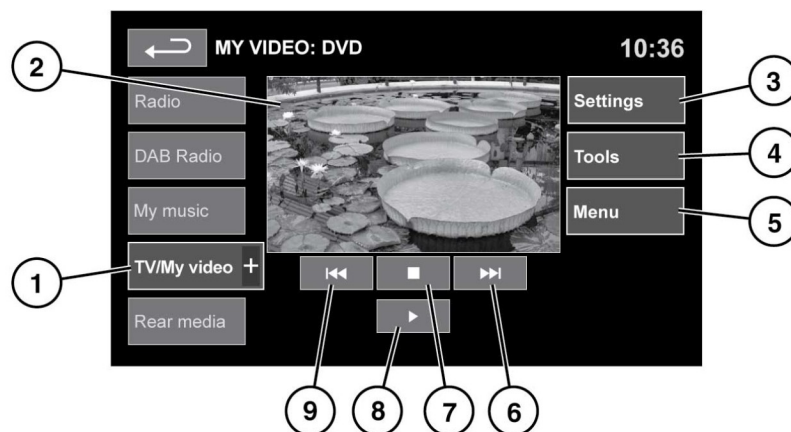
- Touch and hold to store the current channel as a preset. The channel name will then be displayed on the soft key.
- Briefly touch to select the channel stored on that preset.

Note: Stored presets contain information identifying the country where the preset was stored. When a preset is selected, the TV format of the country where the preset stored will be adopted. As analogue TV formats differ in different countries, this may create a situation where the analogue channel list is empty.

For information on the use of the Audio/Video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel. See **125, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS.**

Video media player

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



5156982



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

- 1. TV/My video:** TV band/video input selection.
 Touch the **TV/My video** icon to view and select DVD or other forms of video media (CD/USB), provided the relevant media is present. The selected option will be displayed.
- 2. Preview screen for video media information:** Touch to select full screen mode.
 Short touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
 To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.
- 3. Settings:** Depending on the video media specification, there are 3 sub-menus within settings: **Options**, **VOD** (Video On Demand) and **Audio settings**.

VOD allows playing of DivX VOD content from a video media. The 8 digit registration code will be displayed when the VOD soft key is touched.

The player must also be registered with DivX. See **127, LICENSING**.

- 4. Tools:** The following options can be selected:
 - **GOTO:** The GOTO menu allows you to access specific parts of the video, by **Chapter** or **Title number**.
 - Subtitles.
 - Angle.
 - Audio.
 - Top menu.
- 5. Menu:** Select to view the Video media menu. On some screens this may be replaced by a **Browse** soft key.
- 6. Seek up:** Select to view the next DVD chapter or to scroll through video media files.
- 7. Select to pre-stop playback.** A second touch will stop and reset the DVD.

Video media player

8. Select to start/restart play.
9. Seek down: Select to view the previous DVD chapter or to scroll through video media files.

For information on the CD/DVD loading slot and eject button, and the use of the Audio/Video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel, see **125, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving the video picture will automatically be inhibited. The Touch screen will display the **TV/My video** screen and the relevant safety message will be displayed. If Dual view is fitted, a prompt for the passenger to activate dual view is displayed. See **146, DUAL VIEW**.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

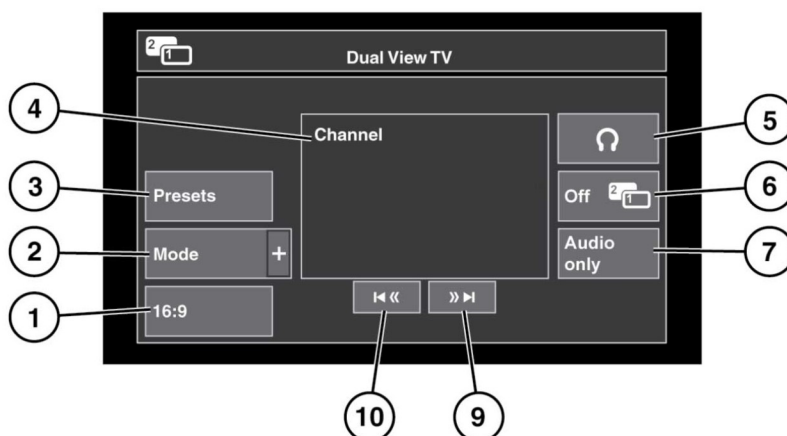
When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

Use the relevant soft key to select the **4:3, 16:9** or **Zoom** option to magnify the picture.

L

Dual view

DUAL VIEW CONTROLS



E156290

1. Select to change the picture format (4:3, Zoom, 16:9). The next available format is displayed on the soft key.
2. Select to view a list of all available video sources. Touch the relevant soft key to select an alternative source. The controls menu for that source will then be displayed.
3. Touch to select a list of pre-set channels.
Note: The preview screen will be deactivated if the vehicle is moving.
4. Information on the current video source (e.g. TV channel and programme name).
5. Select to switch wireless headphone output on or off.
6. Select to cancel dual view: The Touch screen reverts to the menu currently in use by the driver.
7. Select to retain audio for the video source while the display reverts to the menu currently in use by the driver.
8. Seek up: Select to view the next channel on the channel list or the next track on CD or DVD.
9. Seek down: Select to view the previous channel on the channel list or the previous track on CD or DVD.
Note: If the chosen media is CD or DVD, then a play/pause soft key is displayed between the Seek soft keys.
Note: If the controls menu is not used for over 5 seconds, the display will revert to full screen mode. Press the dual view button again to view the controls.

DUAL VIEW

Dual view allows the front passenger to view TV or other video media on the Touch screen, while the driver uses an alternative system (e.g. radio or navigation).

Dual view

Note: If the driver has selected an alternative audio source (e.g. radio), this will be heard over the vehicle speakers. The passenger will need to listen to the dual view source using the wireless headphones.



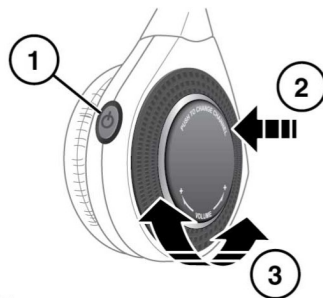
Press this button to activate dual view mode (located to the right side of the Touch screen).

Once Dual view is active, the passenger should press this button to show/hide the dual view controls menu.

Note: The controls menu will also be displayed on the driver's view.

Note: Rear seat passengers may be able to see both views when Dual view is active.

DUAL VIEW HEADPHONES



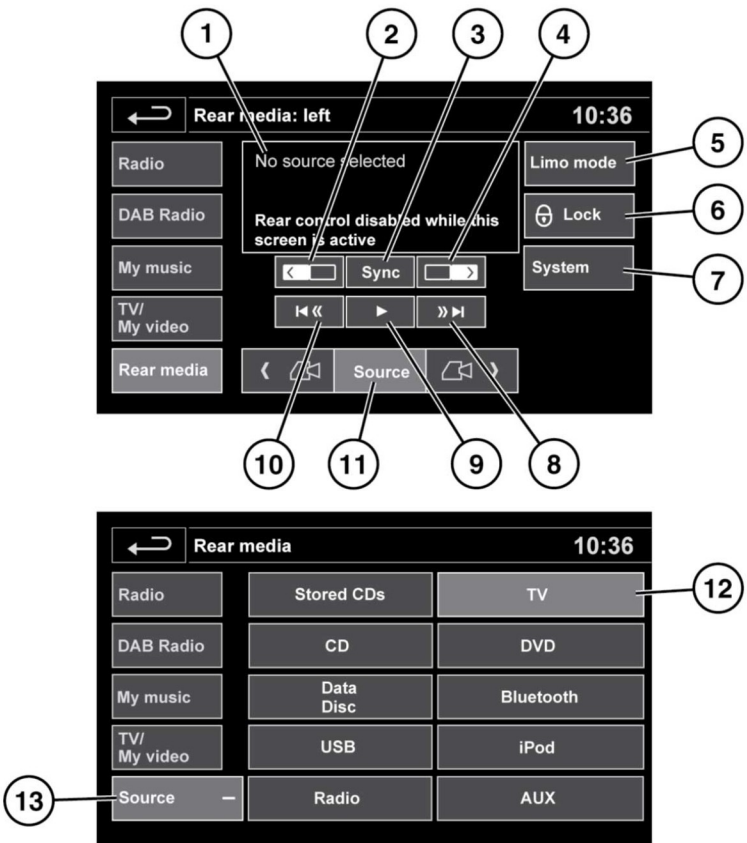
E150761

1. Press to turn on/off.
2. Press to change audio channel.
3. Rotate to adjust headphone volume.

L

Rear media

REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN



E157297

Touch **Rear media** on the Audio/video home menu to select the Rear media control screen.

1. Information display.
2. Touch to select the left-side rear screen.
3. Touch to synchronise both screens. Then select the source to be synchronised.
Note: Pressing the synchronise button will not synchronise a source already selected.
4. Touch to select the right-side rear screen.

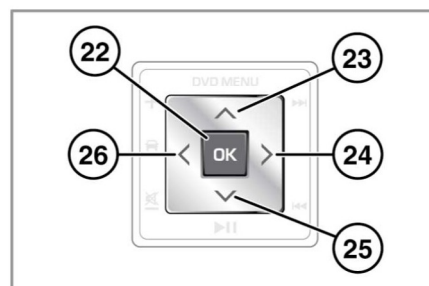
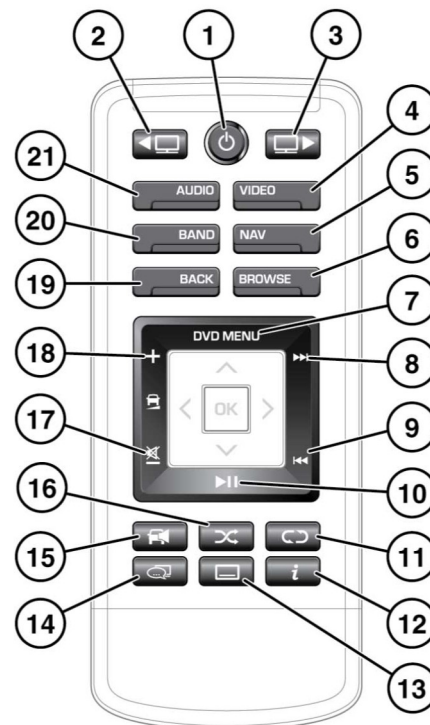
5. **Limo mode:** Touch to turn Limousine mode ON/OFF.
When Limousine mode is turned ON, the rear passengers will have control of the total cabin audio system and any shared sources via the remote control.
6. **Lock:** Touch to lock or unlock the rear media remote.
7. **System:** Touch to turn the selected rear screen/s ON/OFF.

Rear media

8. Forward/Skip for the selected screen.
 9. Play/Pause for the selected screen.
 10. Rewind/Skip for the selected screen.
 11. **Source**: Touch to select the rear media source screen.
 12. Media source selection: Touch the required media button.
- Note:** For DAB Radio select Radio.
13. **Source** -: Touch to select the required media and return to the **Rear media** control screen. If required, the selected source can then be controlled via the front screen.

Note: When the main rear media control screen is displayed on the Touch screen, the rear media remote control will be locked out.

REAR MEDIA REMOTE CONTROL



E151273

1. Press and release to turn off the screen.
Press and hold to turn off the rear media system.
2. Left screen select.

Rear media

3. Right screen select.
4. Video source select.
5. Navigation summary.
Brazil only: 1/12 screen segment select.
6. Browse/TV channel list.
7. DVD menu.
8. Next track/file/channel/station.
9. Previous track/file/channel/station.
10. Play/Pause.
11. Repeat.
Brazil only: Repeat and 'Red' selections.
12. Information.
Brazil only: Information and 'Yellow' selections.
13. Subtitles on/off.
Brazil only: Subtitles on/off and 'Green' selections.
14. Press to select any available TV streams.
15. Cabin audio volume on/off.
16. Shuffle.
Brazil only: Shuffle and 'Blue' selections.
17. Cabin audio volume decrease/mute.
18. Cabin audio volume increase.
19. **Back**: Press to go back to previous menu.
20. Radio band select.
Brazil only: Radio band select and interactive TV select.
21. Audio source select.
22. **OK**: Press to confirm selection.
23. Cursor control: Up*.
24. Cursor control: Right*.
25. Cursor control: Down*.
26. Cursor control: Left*.

*These are multi-function keys depending on the source selected.

USING RSE

To make sure the system responds to your selections, the upper end of the remote control should be pointed towards the appropriate rear screen.

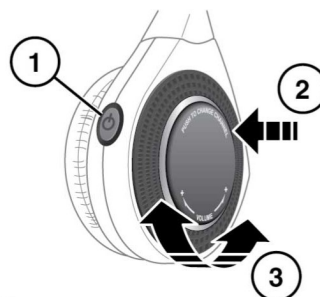
To activate the system, press the rear media on/off button on the remote control, followed by the appropriate screen selection button.

Next, select the desired audio or video function button. Subsequent selections on the remote control will operate the last selected user system.

To avoid accidental operation of the wrong user system, it is advisable to always select the required user system before making any other selection.

Note: To prevent accidental damage, always store the remote control in the stowage area provided when not in use.

REAR MEDIA HEADPHONES

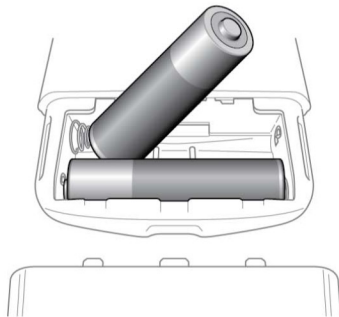


E150761

1. Press to turn on/off.
2. Press to change audio channel.
3. Rotate to adjust headphone volume.

Rear media

REAR MEDIA REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



E152605

Low battery power is indicated by the remote control power button flashing 3 times when pressed. To renew the batteries:

- Remove the chrome battery cover.
- Install 2 AAA batteries. Make sure the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the remote control battery compartment.

Note: The remote control will not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.

Note: Always use good quality batteries of the same type.

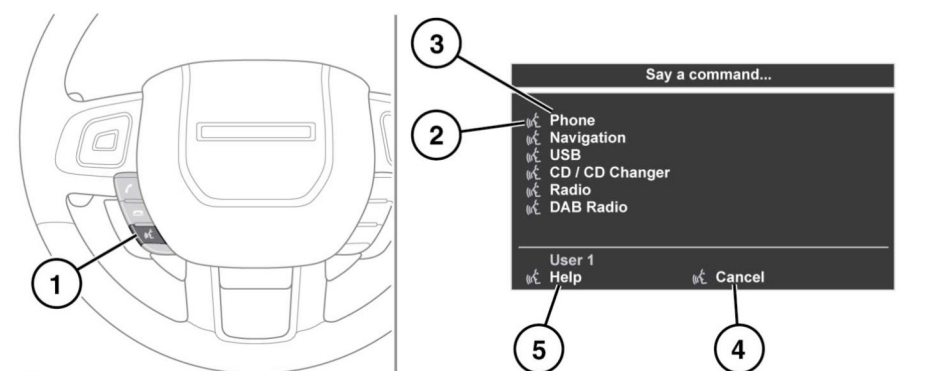
- Replace the chrome battery cover.



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

Voice control

USING VOICE CONTROL



E155606

Note: The voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Land Rover cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice system for compatibility with a particular accent group.

1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a voice session. A pop up menu will appear on the Touch screen. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.

Note: Briefly press the Voice button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.

2. Voice symbol: Indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before using the command.
3. Command list: Appears on the pop up menu, providing feedback and available commands at each stage of the voice session. Say an available command.

Note: As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear alongside the relevant command, before using the command.

4. When displayed, say **Cancel** to cancel the current voice session.
5. When displayed, say **Help** to get assistance during a voice session.

Note: The currently selected user (**User 1** or **User 2**) is identified at the bottom of the command list.

Note: If a listed item is longer than the available space on the menu, ...> will appear. Use the seek controls on the steering wheel to view the entire entry. See **125, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the Voice system:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say **Voice tutorial**.

Voice control

Alternatively, the tutorial can be selected using the Touch screen, as follows:

1. Select **Setup** from the Touch screen **Home** menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Operating guide** from the **Voice settings** menu.
4. Select **Voice tutorial**.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICE TRAINING

This is a feature designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user, once the training has been completed. To carry out Voice training:

1. Select **Setup** from the **Home** menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Voice training** from the **Voice settings** menu.
4. Select **User 1** or **User 2**, to start the training.
5. Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the Voice system so that a single name can be used to call-up a navigation destination, telephone number or radio channel.

To add a Voicetag:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a Voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound then say **Phone**, **Navigation** or **Radio**.

3. Say **Store voicetag**.

Alternatively, Voicetags can be managed via the Touch screen as follows:

1. Select **Setup** from the **Home** menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the **Setup** menu.
3. Select **Voicetags** from the **Voice settings** menu.
4. Select the system which the Voicetag is to activate (**Phone**, **Navigation** or **Radio/DAB**).

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

To request the display of Points Of Interest (POI) identifiers on the navigation display, say **Navigation** with 1 of the following POI categories:

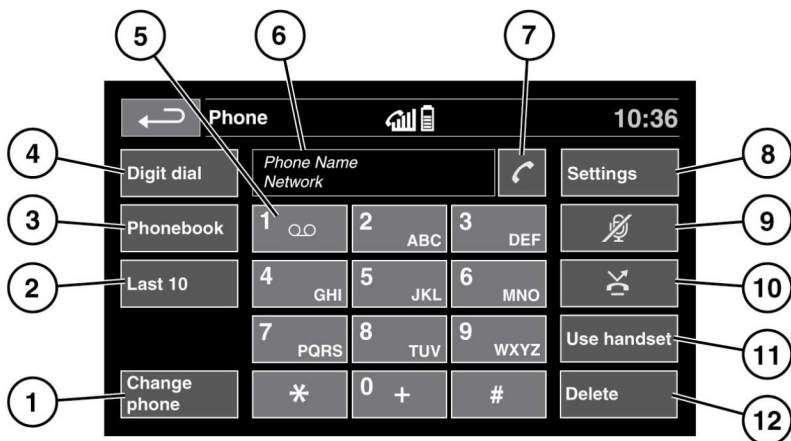
- **Navigation (Petrol station/Petrol)**
- **Navigation (Parking/Car park)**
- **Navigation Land Rover [Dealer]**
- **Navigation Hospital**
- **Navigation Golf course**
- **Navigation Tourist information**
- **Navigation (Restaurant/I'm hungry)**
- **Navigation Shopping centre**
- **Navigation Hotel**
- **Navigation Motorway service**
- **Navigation Town centre**

Note: The word **Navigation** must be followed immediately by a category.

Icons will appear on the navigation display, indicating the locations of the selected POI. For further information about POIs. See **166, CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.

Telephone

TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



E157295

- 1. Change phone:** Search new or change to another paired phone.
- 2. Last 10:** Access the last 10 dialed, received and missed calls.
- 3. Phonebook:** Access the downloaded phonebook.
- 4. Digit dial:** Access Digit dialling mode.
- 5.** Touch and hold to retrieve your voice mail.
- 6. Status display:** Displays the name and/or number dialled and call duration.
- 7.** Call Connect/Disconnect icons. Touch to send/accept or end/reject a call.
- 8. Settings:** Access Voice mail set up, Answer options and Phone options.
- 9. Mute microphone:** Initiate Privacy mode. While selected, the caller will not hear you talking.
- 10. Auto reject.** When active, any incoming calls will be rejected or diverted to voice mail (depending on mobile phone settings).
- 11. Use handset:** Switch the call to your mobile phone.

- 12. Delete:** Touch to delete the last entered digit, and hold to delete the whole entered number.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth**® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

Note: HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

Telephone

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, your **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle or from the Touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

TELEPHONE SAFETY



Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.



Always stow your mobile phone securely.



The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (6 inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Owners section of the Land Rover website at www.landrover.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The Bluetooth® wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle using the mobile phone will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.*

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. From the **Home** menu, select **Phone**.
3. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
4. Select the **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: *The vehicle's Bluetooth® wireless technology system is discoverable for only 3 minutes.*

5. Using the mobile phone, search for **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices.

Telephone

On some phones, this is referred to as new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

6. When the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing.

Either the phone or the vehicle's system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.

7. Enter the same PIN into the other device.
8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit dialling screen.

Note: Some mobile phones require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

1. Switch on your mobile phone's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device connection. Make sure that your mobile phone is in **Bluetooth** wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your phone's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
3. From the **Home** menu select **Phone**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
5. Select the **Vehicle to device** option.

6. Identify your phone from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

Note: If more than 5 phones are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

7. When prompted, enter the PIN code into your phone. See your phone's operating instructions for more information.
8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: Due to the duration of a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device search, it is advised that the timeout to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for devices. This setting can be changed within **Vehicle, Syst settings, Display set, Timeout to home screen**.

CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE











Up to 10 mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only one can be connected and ready for use as a phone at any one time.

To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle, follow the steps below:

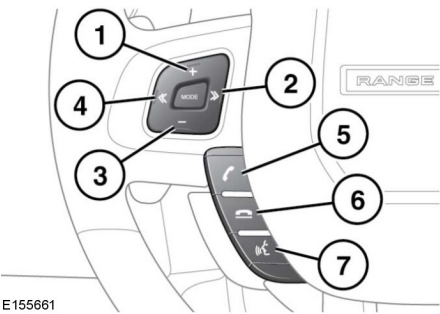
1. From the **Home** menu, select **Phone**.
2. A menu will appear. Select **Change phone**.
3. Identify and select your phone from the displayed list.
4. Once your phone is connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit dialling screen.

Telephone

TELEPHONE SYSTEM ICONS

-  Connect: Use to send or accept a call and access last 10 calls list.
-  Disconnect: Use to end or reject a call.
-  No phone connected.
-  Phone signal strength indicator.
-  Phone battery level indicator.
-  Bluetooth: Indicates that a Bluetooth® wireless technology device is connected.
-  Tick: Indicates that a Bluetooth wireless technology device is paired.
-  Voicemail: Press and hold to dial the stored voicemail number.
-  Scroll bar up arrow: Use to scroll up lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.
-  Scroll bar down arrow: Use to scroll down lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



- E155661
1.

Increase the volume when in a call, scroll up a displayed list or number listed for a stored contact.
2.

Press to scroll to the last 10 list and received calls.
3.

Decrease the volume when in a call or scroll down a displayed list or a number listed for a stored contact.
4.

Press to scroll back through received calls, the last 10 list and finally to exit the list.
5.

Press to answer an incoming call. Press to end a call. Press and release to dial a number/contact. Press and release to access the last 10 dialled list. Press and hold to access the phonebook list view.
6.

Press to end or reject a call.
7.

Press to activate voice control.

Note: When scrolling through a phonebook or the last 10 list, each contact is also displayed in the Message centre.

Note: In order to scroll through any last 10 list, the 'phone' button (5) must first be pressed.

CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the audio system's volume control.

L

Telephone

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.



Home.



Work.

PHONEBOOK

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's phonebook each time the phone is connected to the system. See **155**, **TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the phonebook in 2 different areas, the SIM card and the phone memory. The vehicle system will access only those numbers stored in the phone memory.

To access contacts from the phonebook:

1. From the Phone menu, select **Phonebook**.
2. Using the keyboard, select the letter you wish to search under.
3. Select **List** to view the phonebook.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. If a contact has more than 1 number stored, select the required number from the list.

Note: *It may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*

There are also options to view more contact information, by selecting the corresponding **i** key.

If your phone supports contact type data, you will be able to see a contact type icon in the vehicle's phonebook directory. These can be seen on the right side of each contact in the directory and will indicate 1 of the following types:



Default.



Mobile.

Navigation system

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance, if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the hard drive, to establish the true position of the vehicle.

Note: Mapping data loaded on the hard drive is relevant to the market in which the vehicle is first sold and will provide guidance and information only for that area. Your Dealer/Authorised Repairer will have details of software updates.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens and map displays.

! Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.

Note: The Navigation system fitted to your vehicle does not support speed camera alerts.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

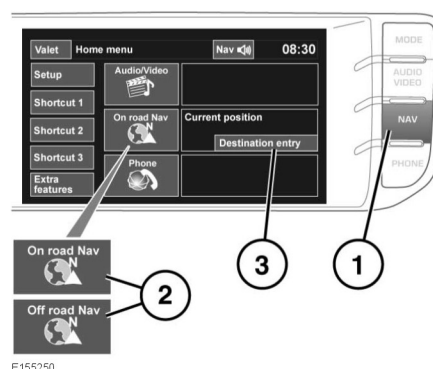
GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels and roads, under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- 2 roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another destination.
- After the vehicle is rotated on a turntable.
- After vehicle battery disconnection.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM



1. **NAV** shortcut button: Press for navigation.
2. **Navigation** soft key: Touch for navigation.
3. **Destination entry**: Touch to display the destination entry menu.

Note: On vehicles with off-road navigation, the soft key includes **On road NAV** or **Off road NAV**, to show the current Navigation mode.

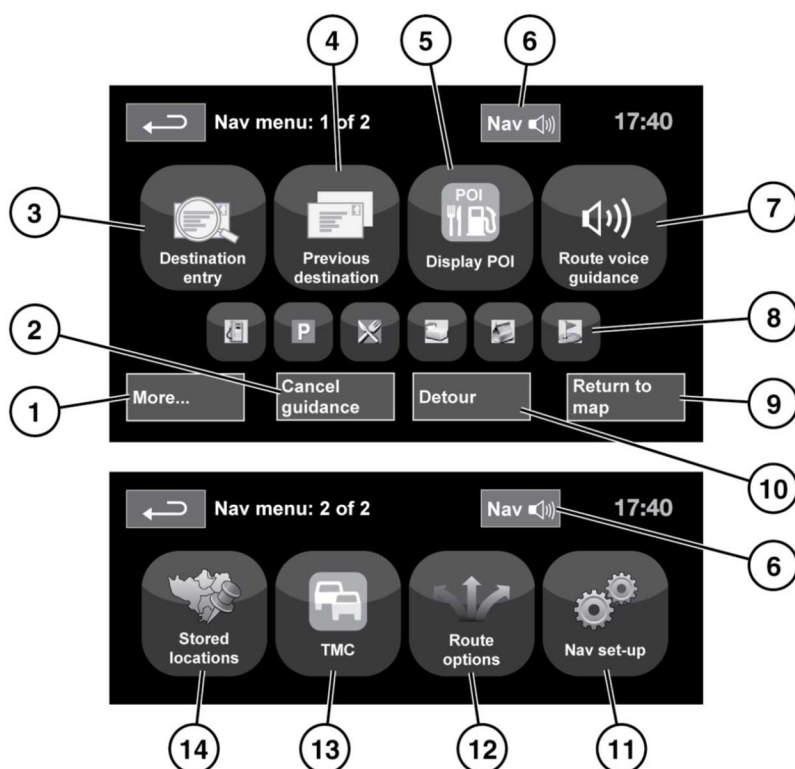
After touching **Continue**, the Touch screen will display the previously displayed map view. This will show the current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the Main menu screen.

L

Navigation system

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav set-up** area. These settings are applied whenever navigation is used.

MAIN MENU



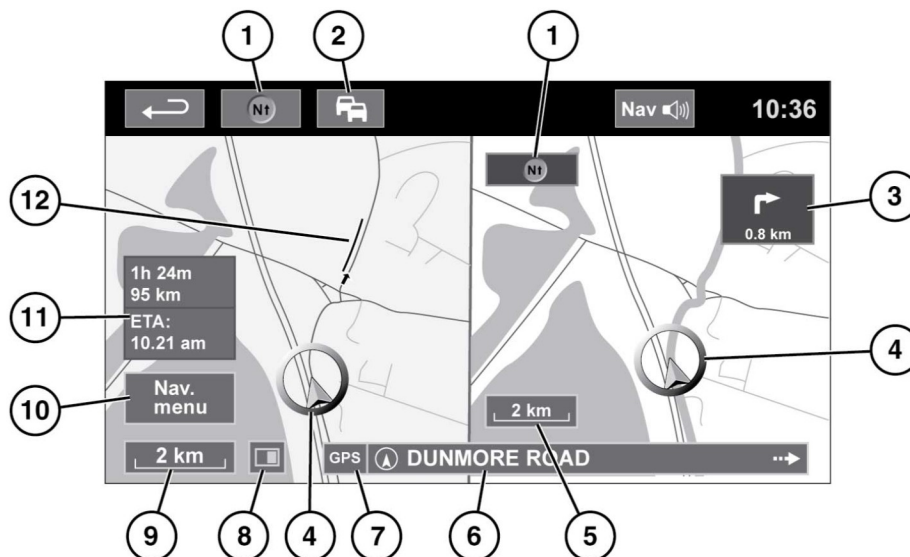
E163265

1. **More...:** Displays page 2 of 2 Nav menu screens.
2. **Cancel guidance:** Cancels the current route guidance.
3. **Destination entry:** Provides a choice of options for entering a destination.
4. **Previous destination:** Displays previous destinations entered.
5. **Display/Hide POI:** Turns the POI (Point Of Interest) icons on the map on/off.
6. When a destination is set, the Range Rover logo is replaced by a soft key which enables the last voice instruction to be repeated.
7. **Route voice guidance:** Allows the Voice guidance messages to be turned off for the current journey. The soft key is highlighted while Voice guidance is enabled.

Navigation system

- 8. Quick POI shortcuts:** This provides the option to quickly enter a destination of a local POI. The categories can be changed in the Navigation setup menu.
- 9. Return to map:** Advances to the main map screen.
- 10. Detour:** Allows a detour from the current route.
- 11. Nav set-up:** Settings for the Navigation system.
- 12. Route options:** Allows selection of various options for the route.
- 13. TMC (Traffic Message Channel):** Not used for entering a destination but, when enabled, will provide data about road conditions and any events that may affect the journey.
- 14. Stored locations:** Manages the stored locations.

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



E153266

- 1. Compass (always indicates north):** Press to select: north up, heading up or bird's eye map style.
- 2. TMC (Traffic Message Channel) signal:** Without a diagonal bar, a signal is being received; with a diagonal bar, a signal is not being received. The icon will also change colour depending on the status of traffic on the route.
- 3. Next direction display:** When Junction map view has been switched off, touch the icon to view again.
- 4. Current vehicle position and direction.**
- 5. Right map view, scale/zoom setting.**
- 6. Current location.**
- 7. GPS signal indicator:** The indicator is only displayed when there is no reception.
- 8. Screen mode.**

Navigation system

9. Left map view, scale/zoom setting.
10. Opens the Navigation menu; 1 of 2 screens.
11. Distance/time/ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival) to the destination.
12. TMC event (traffic congestion).



Touch to close the Junction and Motorway junction view. The previously displayed map is shown after closing.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When under guidance, the map zooms in automatically when approaching a junction or motorway junction.

1. From the map screen, touch the left map view, scale/zoom soft key.
2. Touch the **Auto zoom** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when auto zoom is enabled.

Note: The highest level to which the map will zoom out, is the scale value set before the **Auto Zoom** feature is switched on.

SCREEN MODES

Touch the screen mode selection key to view a series of icons, each depicting a different screen mode (as detailed below). Touch the relevant icon to select the desired screen mode.



Full screen view.



Split screen view.



Shows a list of turn directions on the right half of the screen.



Guidance screen: Shows a detailed view of the next junction on the motorway or junction view on non-motorway roads, in the right half of the screen.



Motorway information: This view is only available when travelling on a motorway. It displays automatically to show remaining motorway exits along your route or all exits on current motorway when route is not set.

To turn off the Guidance or Motorway information screens, proceed as follows:

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More...**
2. Select **Nav set-up**.
3. Touch **User settings**.
4. Touch **Guidance screen** or **Motorway information** to deselect the option.
5. Touch **Ok** to confirm.

SEARCH AREA

The navigation map database is divided into countries, or areas of countries, called search areas. When setting a route, the destination (or waypoint) entered must be in the currently selected search area.

Before attempting to set a destination or waypoint, set the correct search area as follows:

1. Select **Destination entry** from the main navigation menu.
2. Touch **More...**
3. Touch **Search area**.
4. Scroll through the list and select the 3 letter code that corresponds to the desired destination area.

Navigation system

5. Select **Ok**. The destination entry menu is shown and the information window shows the currently selected search area.

SETTING A DESTINATION

To set a destination proceed as follows:

1. After touching **Continue**, the initial map screen is displayed, now touch **Nav menu**.
2. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.

Note: Destination entry button is also available in Home menu as well as in the main map view.

3. Touch **Address** from the **Destination** screen and input the town name or postcode (short postcode in the UK).
4. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all the possible towns.
5. If necessary, use the scroll arrows to the left of the list to search up or down. Select the town that you require.
6. Now enter the road name. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all the possible roads.
7. Select the road you require. Enter the house number of the address (if known) and then touch **Ok** to confirm.
8. If the house number is not known, select **Ok**, the end of the road is then used as the destination.
9. The map screen showing the selected destination details is displayed. Touch **GO** to calculate the default quick route, or **Review route** for alternative routes.
10. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

START GUIDANCE

After selecting **Review route**, the system will calculate the route.

1. Touch **3 Routes** to display a choice of 3 different route options on the map. The roads on the map are drawn in 3 different colours to highlight each route. EcoRoute helps you find the most fuel-efficient route available. A display of 3 leaves indicates the most fuel-efficient route.
2. Select route **Quick**, **Short** or **Alt route** by touching the respective box displayed on the right side of the map.
3. Touch **Change Route** followed by **Route preferences** to change the route settings.
4. When you have made your selection, if any, touch **GO**.

Note: As you approach a junction, in addition to the voice guidance, an inset on the map will display an enlarged view of the junction.

AVOID POINTS

When calculating a route, an area to avoid can be set and stored.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Select the location of the area to avoid from the **Destination entry** menu. Touch **Ok** to activate the view where the size of the area to avoid can be set. The size of the area can be adjusted by using the '+' and '-' symbols.
6. Touch **Ok** to activate the area to avoid.
7. Touch **Ok**, the area to avoid is now set and stored.

Navigation system

To edit or delete an area to avoid from the stored list:

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. From the sub-menu, select **Edit** or **Delete**.

EASY ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Easy Route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, **Easy Route** changes the calculation parameters of **Alt.** (Alternative route), in order to reduce:

- Junctions.
- Turns.
- Turns that cross traffic.
- The priority of minor roads.
- Complex junctions and manoeuvres.

LEARN ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Learn Route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, if you make the same deviation from the proposed route 3 times, then the system will memorise the deviation and offer that as the normal route from then on. Select **Reset all routes** to delete any learnt routes and return to the default settings.

VOICE GUIDANCE

To turn Voice guidance on or off, but maintain Route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Route voice guidance** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when Voice guidance is enabled.

CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE

To clear the route, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Cancel guidance** soft key.

QUICK POI SELECTION

To select a Quick POI proceed as follows:

1. Touch the map to display the additional options.
2. Touch the **Point Of Interest** (POI) soft key.
3. The screen shows 6 suggested categories, 5 of which can be selected as quick **Point Of Interest** (POI).
4. Select a Quick POI category, or touch **More** to see further POIs. Touch **Ok** to confirm a selection.
5. The map with the POI icon(s) is displayed. Scroll the map to the POI icon and then touch **Set destination** to set and calculate the route.
6. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

Note: Selected POIs can be hidden if required by selecting **Nav menu** followed by **Hide POI**.

Note: POI icons can only be displayed up to the 1 km (½ mile) zoom level.

RESTORE SYSTEM DEFAULTS

From the Navigation menu, press **More...** and then select **Nav setup**. If you have made any changes to the system's default settings, use this menu to restore the original settings.

FAVOURITES

This enables you to manage destinations such as, place of work, home, favourite restaurant.

From the favourites sub-menu in stored locations, you can save up to 400 stored favourites.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**

Navigation system

2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Favourite**.
4. To store a favourite, select **Add** from the sub-menu.
5. Select any destination entry method and confirm the desired location.

FAVOURITES DETAILS

1. From the **Stored locations** menu, select **Favourite**.
2. Select **Edit** or **Delete**.
3. Touch the selected favourite to display the details.
4. Select the chosen detail to edit. Details include **Attribute**, **Name**, **Phone number**, **Location** and **Icon**.

HOME

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Home location**.
4. To store a home location, select **Add** from the sub-menu.
5. Select any destination entry method to set your home location. Touch **Ok** to confirm.
6. Touch **Ok** from the favourite summary; home location is now set.

POSTCODE

Not all countries have this facility.

1. From the **Nav menu** select **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **Postcode**. Enter the postcode of your waypoint or destination from the keypad. The postcode must be entered precisely, including any spaces or punctuation.

3. When the postcode has been entered touch **Ok**.

***Note:** This includes full Postcode for the UK.*

EMERGENCY

Not all countries have this facility.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **Emergency**, to display a list of local police stations, hospitals or Land Rover Dealerships.
3. Touch **Name** to display the list in alphabetical order or **Distance** to display the list in order of proximity to the current vehicle location.
4. Touch the name of the facility to set it as a destination or waypoint.

MAP

Scroll the map to the area of your destination or waypoint, zooming in if required.

This location can be stored as a favourite, destination or waypoint.

COORDINATES

If you know the coordinates of your destination they can be entered from this screen.

1. From the **Nav menu**, select **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Then select **Coordinates**. The full latitude must be entered first before the longitude coordinates can be entered.
4. Touch **OK**, when the coordinates have been entered.

Navigation system

If the coordinates entered are not contained within the area covered by the available maps, a message will be shown. This can also occur if the incorrect coordinates have been entered.

RECALLING A PREVIOUS DESTINATION

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Previous destination**.
2. Touch your previous destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.
3. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

MOTORWAY ENTRY/EXIT

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Motorway Entry/Exit**.
4. Enter the motorway name or number, or select from **List**.
5. Touch **Entrance** or **Exit**.
6. Enter the entrance or exit name for the chosen motorway, or select from **List**. The map showing the selected motorway and junction is displayed.
7. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

To select a POI proceed as follows:

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch **POI name** and touch **Ok** to confirm.
5. Enter POI name, or select from **List**.

6. Alternatively, choose **Category** to see all categories of POI and make your selection. See **166, CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.
7. To narrow the search area, touch **Town** to enter a town name.
8. Once the POI has been selected, the map showing the selected destination is displayed.
9. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

***Note:** If entering a POI name results in too many matches being listed, try entering the town name first. If you do not know the name of the POI you want, try selecting a POI category.*

***Note:** POI icons can only be displayed up to the 1 km (½ mile) zoom level.*

DEALER LOCATIONS

Details of Land Rover Dealers are held on the Navigation system as a Point Of Interest (POI) category, under car/automotive category. See **167, LOCAL POI SEARCH**.

CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES

The POI database is divided into a number of categories. Each main category is further divided into a number of sub-categories.

Touch the desired category and then choose desired sub-categories.

MY POI

Additional POIs can be downloaded and added to the list. The system can store up to 50,000 'My POIs', in up to 100 groups (whichever comes first).

Navigation system

Free POIs can be found on the internet and downloaded into the system. The name of the imported file will be displayed as a group name. Imported icons will be displayed on the map. In order for a file or icon to be successfully downloaded, the following conditions must exist:

- The POI file must be in a GPS Exchange (.gpx) format, version 1.1.
- The POI file name must not contain the following characters; -, /, :, *, ", <, >, or |.
- The POI file name must not exceed 35 characters.
- The icon file name must match the POI file name.
- The icon size must not exceed 32x32 dots.
- The icon format must be a bitmap (.bmp) or jpeg (.jpg).

To download files or icons, connect a USB device containing the POIs. See **138**, **CONNECTING A DEVICE**.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More....**
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **My POI**.
4. Select **Add** to individually select each POI group to be downloaded. Select **Edit** to change **Name**, **Icon** or **Sound icon** or select **Delete**.

LOCAL POI SEARCH

Use to select Points Of Interest (POIs) close to the vehicle position.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More....**
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch **POI near current** and touch **Ok** to confirm.

5. Select a POI category, if required select again from a sub-category and touch **Ok** to confirm.

6. Touch **Show List** or **Select Category** to make further selections.

Note: Up to 5 categories can be chosen to select a POI from.

7. Select your POI destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.

8. Touch **Destination** to set and calculate the route.

9. Touch **GO** to start the journey.

Note: Nav POI near current position can be set as a Home menu shortcut. See **68**, **TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

ARABIC NAVIGATION

To turn Arabic navigation on or off.

1. From the **Home menu**, touch **Set-up**.
2. Touch **System**.
3. Touch **Language** and select Arabic navigation **On**.
4. Select **Yes** to continue with Arabic navigation.

Note: Voice recognition system is not compatible with Arabic navigation.

RDS-TMC OVERVIEW

RDS-TMC (Radio Data System-Traffic Message Channel) is a feature that announces traffic hold-ups on your route, as broadcast by radio stations that transmit TMC information.

Touch the **TMC** button on the Navigation menu to access the TMC menu.

Navigation system

TMC events ahead, on route, can be displayed by touching the **Events ahead** soft key. TMC can be set to display on the map for all events, for major events or can be switched off. During route calculation, avoiding events is set to ON by default.

RDS-TMC DISPLAY

When a TMC signal is received, the icon in the top left of the screen will appear green. If a TMC signal is not being received, the icon will be shown with a bar through it.

The system will inform the driver of any roadworks, narrow road, contraflow, accidents, slippery road, diversion, information, parking information, congestion or other hazard.

The driver is informed of a traffic event as follows:

- An arrow is shown on the map at the location of the event.
- Text can be displayed showing the details of each occurrence. This can be selected by scrolling the map to an event and pressing **i** icon.
- Dynamic route guidance, displayed on top of the screen, informs about the successful calculation of an alternative route avoiding the event on the current route. Press **Info** for further options.
- Traffic event list shows all events sorted by road name/distance along your actual route. The information regarding the hold-up is maintained and updated even if the vehicle crosses into another country.

RDS-TMC ICONS








Any traffic event (broadcast on TMC) in your area, will be displayed as an arrow on the map.

In case of lost reception, this data is stored in the system for up to 15 minutes.

The colour of the TMC icon changes in order to show the type and priority of a TMC event. The background colour of the icon returns to normal when there is no longer an event or hold-up, or if any re-route instructions are calculated.


The TMC Event icons appear on the navigation map display to indicate the location and nature of a TMC event.

TMC Event icons will appear on the map, even if the event does not occur on your route.

-  Incident (Red star)
-  Moving tailback ahead (Red arrow)
-  Moving traffic queue, both lanes (Red double arrow)
-  Slow Traffic Ahead (Yellow arrow)
-  Slow Traffic Both Carriageways (Yellow double arrow)
-  Information (Yellow circle)
-  Incident (Yellow star)

Note: Single arrow icons indicate that the traffic event affects traffic travelling in the direction of the arrow. Double arrows indicate that both directions are affected.

If the map is scrolled to any of the above events, further details are available and are indicated as one of the following icons.

-  Closed Road

Navigation system

	Special Warning (orange triangle)
	Danger (red triangle)
	Stationary Traffic
	Congestion
	Delay
	Diversion
	Contraflow
	Event
	Height Width Limit

USING TMC

Dynamic route guidance will attempt to calculate an alternative route to avoid a traffic event when the system receives an event warning. The system calculates a new route for all sections. However, if any waypoints are set, the system calculates for the next waypoint. If the event on route is serious (closed road) or if the new route is shorter than the current one and the current one was not recalculated within the last 5 minutes, then a message to confirm the new route will be displayed. This pop-up message will be displayed for 5 minutes and if the new route is not rejected, then the vehicle will stay on the current route.

OFF-ROAD NAVIGATION

The system can be switched between On-road and Off-road navigation by pressing the fascia **NAV** button twice, from anywhere in the system, then selecting **On road** or **Off road** as required. The Navigation soft key on the Touch screen Home menu displays **On road NAV** or **Off road NAV**, whichever is the current Navigation mode.

Off-road navigation maps are similar to the on-road maps, but have additional features and information such as a large compass display, heading, altitude, latitude and longitude etc.

When switching to off-road navigation mode during on-road guidance, the current highlighted route will be removed from the map and on-road guidance will be suspended.

Waypoints and destination icons will remain displayed. The destination is marked with a double circle.

When exiting off-road guidance, the system recalculates the route and reverts to on-road guidance.

Note: *TMC is not available in off-road navigation mode.*

NEW ROUTE

Allows the following route entry methods:

- Map.
- Previous.
- Distance and Bearing.
- Coordinates.

Navigation system

LOAD ROUTE

Load route allows a previously stored off-road route to be recalled. Touching the **Load Route** soft key will bring up a list of stored routes; touch the desired route to select. When loading a route, the current vehicle location is stored as the starting point, shown as the letter **S** on the map screen.

ROUTE OPTIONS

Allows access to the following commands:

Edit Route

These menu items are identical in operation to the on-road menus.

A maximum of 20 off-road routes can be stored. When the maximum is reached, the **New Route** soft key will no longer be active.

Stop Guidance

Allows a selected route to be cancelled. Touch the soft key to cancel guidance. All waypoints and icons will be removed.

Display route

The whole route can be displayed during guidance mode. It shows the total mileage of the route and updates as the vehicle's position changes.

CCP to Start (Current Car Position to Start)

A backward or return route can be made at any time. All waypoint icons of the original route are reset and the system draws straight lines between them.

The original start point is now designated as the destination point and waypoints are numbered in countdown order.

CCP to Destination (Current Car Position to Destination)

Restores the original route to destination after **CCP to Start** is selected.

Waypoint list

Off-road navigation waypoints are shown in numerical order. The nearest waypoint is the last in the list. A maximum of 35 waypoints can be stored.

During a forward route, the waypoint with the smaller number is nearest on the guidance display. During a backward or return route the smaller number is furthest away.

The bearing (e.g., R170) and distance (e.g., 1 mile) is a reference to the next waypoint. The bearing is the angle between the current heading and the next waypoint. The displayed information is continuously updated.

While the list is shown, if the destination is reached, the system changes to the map screen.

Skip Waypoint

While on a route, this soft key can be selected to skip the next waypoint. Guidance will then be given to the following waypoint.

Trace Points

If **Current Trace Point** is selected via **Route Options**, trace point icons are automatically placed along a route as it is traversed. They are useful to backtrack along the route, if required.

Adjustments to trace point operation can be made via the same screen. After selecting the **Edit Trace Point** option, changes can be made to any registered trace point route.

Select one of the options and make changes as required (e.g., trace points can be edited, renamed or deleted).

Navigation system

COMPASS VIEW

Compass view is recommended while driving off-road. Select the map screen and then the compass view icon at the top of the screen.

The compass can be viewed as 'north is up' or 'vehicle is up'.



E153055

North is up

- The compass North pointer will always be at the top.
- The vehicle's position arrow in the centre will point in the current direction of travel.
- The coloured icon on the edge of the compass is the direction to the next waypoint or destination. It will always stay in that position.

Vehicle is up

- The vehicle's position arrow in the centre will always point up.
- The compass will rotate as the vehicle's direction changes. Current direction of travel is shown at the top.
- The coloured icon on the edge of the compass will move with the compass.

ORDNANCE SURVEY DATA

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation system.

This is a licence agreement to use the Ordnance Survey (OS) Code-Point data incorporated in the Navigation system. By using this Code-Point data you accept and agree to all of the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The OS Code-Point data is licenced by Ordnance Survey with permission of Her Majesty's Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright. All rights reserved.

LICENCE GRANT

OS grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the OS Code-Point data for your personal use, solely as part of the Navigation system. You may transfer the licence to a subsequent purchaser of the vehicle with which the Navigation system is supplied, provided that the purchaser agrees to abide by each of the terms of this licence.

LICENCE TERMS

These licence terms are governed by English Law and are subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The OS Code-Point data is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise any part of the contents of the OS Code-Point data, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the OS Code-Point data.

Navigation system

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

Ordnance Survey does not warrant or represent that any of the Code-Point data is accurate, error-free or suitable for your purposes. In no event shall OS or the supplier of the Navigation System using the OS Code-Point data be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages for any direct or indirect loss of revenue, profits, business, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the OS Code-Point data, whether in an action in contract or tort (including negligence and breach of statutory duty) or otherwise, even if OS or the supplier of the Navigation System has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event, OS's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of the copy of the OS Code-Point data. Nothing in these licence terms shall operate to exclude or limit any liability which cannot be excluded or limited by law.

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.



The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighbourhood safety; law enforcement, emergency assistance, construction work, road or lane closures, vehicle or speed restrictions, road slope or grade, bridge height/weight or other limits, road or traffic conditions, special events, traffic congestion, or travel time.

NAVTEQ CORPORATION

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation system.

This is a licence agreement for your copy of the Navigable Map Database, (the 'DATABASE') originally made by NAVTEQ Corporation), used in the Navigation system. By using this DATABASE you accept and agree to all of the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighbouring rights therein are owned by NAVTEQ Corporation or its licensors.

Navigation system

LICENCE GRANT

NAVTEQ Corporation grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This licence does not include the right to grant sub-licences.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise substantial parts of the contents of the DATABASE, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all of the terms and conditions of this agreement.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licenced with 'limited rights'.

Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the 'Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database' clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defence agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE of North America is NAVTEQ Corporation, 10400 W. Higgins Road, Suite 400, Rosemont, Illinois 60018, USA.

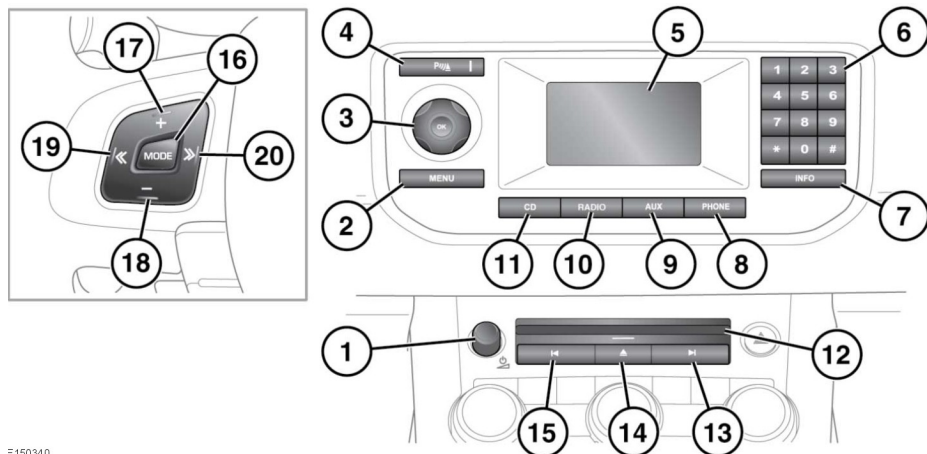
EUROPEAN DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DN-NS-019 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Standard audio system overview

STANDARD AUDIO SYSTEM CONTROLS



E150340

⚠ Sustained exposure to high sound levels can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch on/off.

Note: The radio will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes if the ignition is turned off.

Rotate to adjust the volume level.

Note: The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio unit is used with the engine switched off.

2. **MENU** button:

- Audio settings
- Clock settings
- Language

3. **OK** and navigation menu control:

Use the navigation control to move to any menu cursor/highlight. When the required option is highlighted, press the **OK** button to select.

4. Parking aid.

5. Audio Information display.

6. Keypad.

7. **INFO**: Traffic/News information.

8. **PHONE** menu.

9. **AUX** input select.

10. **RADIO**: Waveband select (FM, FMAST, AM, AMAST).

When DAB is fitted, select for DAB1 or DAB2.

11. **CD** menu.

12. CD loading slot.

13. Seek up:

- Short press to select the next radio station upward in frequency or to select the next track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to enter radio manual seek mode or to scan forward through a CD track. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single steps.

14. CD eject button.

Standard audio system overview

15. Seek down:

- Short press to select the previous radio station downward in frequency or to select the previous track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to enter radio manual seek mode or to scan backward through a CD track. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single steps.

16. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio.

17. Press to increase volume.

18. Press to decrease volume.

19. Seek down:

- Short press to select the previous radio preset or previous track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to scan backward through a track.

20. Seek up:

- Short press to select the next radio preset or the next track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to scan forward through a track.

2. Select **Audio Settings**.

3. Select **Adaptive Volume** then press **OK**.

4. Use the navigation controls to set the required level of AVC effect in the range 0 to 7.

tone adjustment

To adjust the tone:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.

2. Select **Audio Settings**.

3. Select **Sound**. Settings for bass, treble, balance and fade can be adjusted with the navigation controls.

4. Press **OK** to store the settings and return to the previous screen.

Note: If no adjustment is made for several seconds, the display will revert to the previously displayed screen.

licensing

See 127, **LICENSING**.

ADAPTIVE VOLUME CONTROL (AVC)

The AVC feature adjusts the volume level to compensate for the changes in road noise as the vehicle speed increases or decreases.

Note: The AVC setting represents the volume increase and not the volume level.

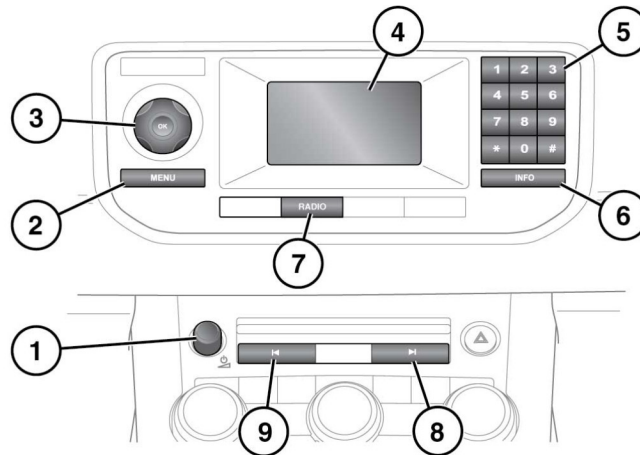
If the AVC level is set to **zero**, there will be no volume increase. With a low level setting, the volume increase at speed will be minimal. If a high level setting is used, there will be a noticeable increase of volume at greater speed.

To set the AVC level:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.

Standard audio system

STANDARD RADIO CONTROLS



E150341



Sustained exposure to high sound levels can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch on/off.

Note: The radio will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes if the ignition is turned off.

Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio unit is used with the engine switched off.

2. **MENU** button:

- Audio settings.
- Clock settings.
- Language.

3. **OK** and navigation menu control:

Use the navigation control to move to any menu cursor/highlight. When the required option is highlighted, press the **OK** button to select.

4. Audio Information display.

5. Keypad.

6. **INFO**: Traffic/News information.

7. **RADIO**: Waveband select (FM, FMAST, AM, AMAST).

When DAB is fitted, select for DAB1 or DAB2.

8. Seek up:

- Short press to select the next radio station upward in frequency.
- Long press to enter radio manual seek mode. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single steps.

9. Seek down:

- Short press to select the next radio station downward in frequency.
- Long press to enter radio manual seek mode. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single steps.

AUTO STORING RADIO STATIONS

AutoStore can be used to store the stations with the strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband.

Standard audio system

Using Autostore:

1. Press the **RADIO (7)** button to select the desired waveband.
2. Find a station. If necessary, use the seek buttons (**8** and **9**).
3. Press and hold the **RADIO (7)** button until the display confirms that Autostore is in progress.

The system will search for stations with the strongest signals on the selected waveband. While the search is in progress, volume is muted.

When the search is complete, the previous volume level will be restored. The radio will switch to the FM-AST or AM-AST waveband where the strongest signal stations have been stored on the Autostore presets.

Note: Autostore will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available and overwrite the previously stored stations.

Note: The Autostore waveband can also be used to store stations manually, in the same way as other wavebands.

RADIO STATION PRESETS

This feature allows favourite stations to be stored so that they can be recalled later.

1. With the **RADIO (7)** button, select a waveband.
2. Tune to the required station. The station will begin play.
3. Press and hold one of the keypad buttons.
4. The station will be stored. Volume will mute momentarily as confirmation.
5. Release the button.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each keypad button.

Note: When driving to another area of the country, FM stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency for that area.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS) (STANDARD SYSTEM)

Your audio unit is equipped with RDS, which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with the normal radio signals.

On the FM waveband, RDS enables the audio to receive traffic and news information broadcasts. RDS also allows the audio to automatically re-tune to stations that are linked to the same network, if that network allows this.

Note: Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS. If a non-RDS station is selected, RDS features will not be available.

REGIONALISATION (REG)

As you drive into different radio reception areas, RDS automatically re-tunes the radio to the strongest signal. When REG is on, the tuner is locked to the current local radio station. With REG switched off, the tuner is allowed to switch to a stronger Enhanced Other Network (EON) when the current EON linked radio station signal becomes weak.

To turn REG on:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Regionalisation**.
4. Press **OK** to enable or disable REG.

Standard audio system

ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCY (AF)

Some radio stations broadcast on different frequencies in different parts of the country. If the selected station signal weakens, the radio will automatically re-tune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF), if one is available. This feature is particularly useful on long journeys, where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas serving the same radio station.

To enable/disable AF:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **ALTERNAT.FREQ.** Turn AF on or off.
4. Press **OK**.

SELECTING TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast traffic information from stations on the FM waveband using the Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) links.

When a radio station capable of providing traffic information is selected, the **TP** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

Briefly press the **INFO (6)** button to select the Traffic Announcement (TA) function. The **TA** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

As soon as a traffic announcement is received, current audio entertainment is interrupted and **Traffic** appears in the display, along with the name of the station providing the information.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** is turned off, then on again.

To cancel a Traffic announcement, briefly press the **INFO** button, or alternatively the **MODE** button on the steering wheel, during the announcement. This will not turn off **TA**.

To deselect the TA function, briefly press the **INFO** button again. The **TA** indicator will disappear from the display.

TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT VOLUME

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes. To adjust the volume of traffic announcements, use the volume control during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

All subsequent traffic announcements will be at the set volume.

SELECTING NEWS INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband using the Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) links, in the same way that traffic information is provided.

To set the NEWS feature:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **News**.
4. Press **OK** to enable or disable the News feature.

To cancel a News announcement, briefly press the **INFO** button, or alternatively the **MODE** button on the steering wheel, during the announcement. Select **INFO** again to turn off the News feature.

Note: Both traffic and news information can be selected at the same time. However, the radio will always give priority to traffic information.

TIME AND DATE SETTINGS

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Clock settings**.

Standard audio system

3. Select a clock function.
4. Once the change has been entered, press **OK**.

LANGUAGE SELECTION

To select a display language:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Language**.
3. Once the change has been entered, press **OK**.

DIGITAL (DAB) RADIO

If your vehicle is equipped for digital radio, press the **RADIO (7)** button to select either of 2 groups DAB1 or DAB2. These 2 groups permit the storing of a total of 20 preset stations or 'services' (10 in each group) using the buttons 0-9 on the keypad (**5**).

DAB radio can significantly increase the number of radio stations available. The DAB signals are transmitted to most major cities, towns and motorway networks.

Unlike AM/FM radio, digital transmits several services on a single frequency. This group of services is known as an ensemble. There may be a number of ensembles receivable in some areas, each typically carrying between 6 and 12 services.

Digital radio is transmitted from regional and local transmitters. Some services are national or regional and are replicated on multiple transmitters throughout the region or country. Other services are local and only available within a limited range of one transmitter.

FINDING DIGITAL SERVICES

Press the seek buttons (**8** or **9**) to search the waveband to find the local active ensembles. Or alternatively the steering wheel seek buttons can perform the same function.

The national channels use the same ensembles throughout a country and so there is usually no need to search for these. If you have stored your favourite national channels already then they will usually be found immediately on the same pre-set buttons.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be moving out of range of the ensemble. Use the seek buttons (**8** or **9**) to search for services which are stronger in that area.

***Note:** If any auxiliary electrical equipment is connected to the vehicle, DAB radio reception capability may be reduced.*

SELECTING AND STORING DIGITAL SERVICES

Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**. In each band the active station will be the last one used. To select another station, press the appropriate preset button (0 to 9).

Any preset can be used to store any Digital Radio service, from any ensemble. If you switch between presets which are on different ensembles, the tuning time can take a few seconds (the word '**Searching....**' briefly appears on the screen). Switching between services within the same ensemble is virtually immediate.

If there is no service stored on a preset, or if the service is not receivable at the current location, the message '**No Reception**' will be displayed.

If the service you want is not already stored in a preset button or cannot be received, then you can step through the other services in the current ensemble by repeated short presses on the Seek-up or Seek-down buttons. At the end of the ensemble, a further press will show '**Searching....**' for a few seconds and then the next ensemble will be shown. You can then step through each service in this new ensemble by repeated short presses as above.

Standard audio system

To store a service on a preset: While playing the desired service, press and hold the desired preset button. A bar-graph will show, indicating how long you need to hold the button, followed by a **'Preset Stored'** pop-up message. Now release the button.

DAB SERVICE LIST

A quick way to see all the services available on the presets and all the other services which may be received in the current ensemble is to use the navigation control **(3)** to go to the waveband list, select either **DAB1** or **DAB2**, then the right navigation button to list the presets of DAB1 or DAB2. If the desired station is not listed, there is a **Service List** option at the top of the list. Scroll up to the **Service List** item and press the right navigation button to see all the services of the current ensemble listed. Use the navigation control up/down buttons to scroll up and down the list. If you want to select a service, scroll the outline box onto the desired service and press **OK**.

DAB MANUAL TUNING

Press and hold the seek-up or seek-down buttons for approximately 3 seconds to enter **Manual Tuning**. The **Manual Tuning** pop-up will appear on the display. Using the seek-up or seek-down buttons you can then move through all the services and ensembles in turn.

If an ensemble is empty or not receivable then the tuning will move along to the next. If an ensemble is only just strong enough to receive but the services are too weak to use, the tuning may stop on that ensemble and display the ensemble's name, and possibly the service's name, but without sound. If no sound is heard within 5 to 10 seconds then press the appropriate seek button again to move onto the next useable ensemble.

To select and play a service of your choice, locate it and make sure the audio is receivable, then press **OK**.

The **Manual Tuning** mode allows up to 30 seconds of inactivity before it times out. If **Manual Tuning** times out with no new service tuned, the radio will revert to the service you were tuned to at the start of your Manual Tuning session.

SERVICELINK

ServiceLink is an item on the Menu **(2)** and can be enabled or disabled using the **OK** button.

When ServiceLink is enabled, 2 additional features come in to operation:

- If you are listening to a local service which has a partner service in an adjacent area, when the signal weakens it will automatically change over to the new area's partner service.
- If you have selected a digital service which has an equivalent FM service in the area and your digital service has deteriorated, then the radio will automatically switch to the alternative FM service until the digital reception becomes adequate again.

We advise that ServiceLink is switched off when searching for ensembles or using Manual Tuning.

DAB DISPLAYED MESSAGES

'Searching....' is displayed when the radio is tuning itself to the correct ensemble. You will see this for a few seconds during some preset changes, and when seeking up or down to another ensemble.

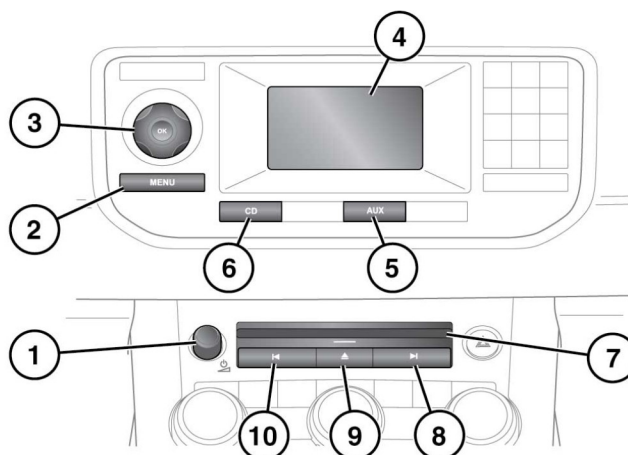
Standard audio system

If ServiceLink is enabled and no alternative signal can be found, 'Searching....' may show for a long period of time since in this mode the radio will continue to search round all the bands automatically until you command it to go to a different service or switch off ServiceLink.

'No Reception' is displayed when ServiceLink is not enabled and you have selected a service which cannot be received in the vehicle's current position. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

'Serv00', 'Serv01' etc. may be shown when the radio can detect signals from an ensemble but cannot decode the service names. These are default labels to replace the non-receivable service names. In these cases the audio is generally impossible to receive from the vehicle's current location. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

STANDARD PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E150343

1. Press to switch on/off. Rotate to adjust volume level.
2. **MENU** button: Audio settings.
3. **OK** and navigation menu control: Use the navigation control to move to any cursor/highlight. When the required option is highlighted, press the **Ok** button to select.
4. Audio Information display.
5. **AUX** input select: Use when a portable device is connected.
6. **CD** menu.
7. CD loading slot.
8. Seek up:
 - Short press to select the next track on chosen audio source.
 - Long press to scan forwards through a CD track or MP3 folder.
9. CD eject button.
10. CD track/MP3 folder buttons.

Standard audio system

10. Seek down:

- Short press to select the previous track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to scan backwards through a CD track or MP3 folder.

LOADING A COMPACT DISC



Do not use discs with paper labels, dual discs or DVDPlus discs. The front loading CD player may load and play this type of disc, however it is likely that the disc will not eject and will block the CD mechanism. Such damage to a CD player will not be covered under warranty.



Do not force the disc into the CD loading slot.

Note: Copy-protected CDs may fail to play in your CD player or may be played subject to various limitations (e.g. sound quality may be impaired). If you experience a problem, try the CD in other players before contacting the CD vendor.

The unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA and AAC files.

It is recommended that only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs are used.

Gently place a CD into the loading slot, the disc will be drawn into the player and begin play.

If a CD is already loaded, playback will resume from the point of last play.

TRACK SELECTION

When playing a CD, the display will show the current track being played and the time elapsed since the current track began to play.

To select a CD track for play:

1. Use the navigation control **(3)** right button to access the track list of the currently playing CD.
2. Use the navigation control up or down buttons to scroll to a track.
3. Press **OK** to select the track for play.

REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

Repeat will play the current track repeatedly. Shuffle alters the playback order for the current CD, so that tracks are played in a random sequence.

To turn Repeat or Shuffle on when a CD is playing:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
4. Press **OK**.

MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

MP3 discs have the potential to hold more music than a conventional CD, because each track can be compressed to a greater degree during recording.

If an MP3 CD is to be used, each session must be properly closed after recording but the whole disc does not have to be finalised.

The highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders, is to play the tracks within the top level first, then the tracks in any sub-folders.

Standard audio system

If a CD contains a mixture of MP3 and CDDA tracks, any MP3 tracks will be ignored.

1. Use the navigation control (3) right button to access the track list of the currently playing folder. Use the left button to access the folder list.
2. Use the navigation control up or down buttons to scroll to a track or folder in the list.
3. Press **OK** to select the track for play or a folder to open.

MP3 REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

When an MP3 CD is playing, playback options include **Repeat** and **Shuffle**.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS (STANDARD SYSTEM)

Portable devices can be connected to the vehicle media hub. Device types include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod® (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).
- Devices with Bluetooth® connectivity. Devices must support A2DP and AVRCP Bluetooth® protocols).

Note: iPod® is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

When connecting a portable storage device, use the **AUX (5)** button. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.



Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

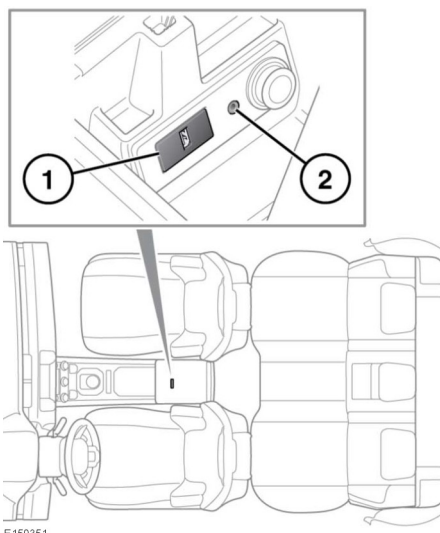
To maximise playback quality, use lossless compression for any media files on iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kbps (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

For media files delivered via USB or MP3 players, the highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.

Note: Some MP3 players may have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

Standard audio system

CONNECTING A DEVICE (STANDARD SYSTEM)



1. USB/iPod socket.
2. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.




TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY (STANDARD SYSTEM)

Please refer to the Ownership section of the Land Rover website at www.landrover.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: The Bluetooth® equipped phones listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.

If the mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), additional features will be available such as battery meter and signal strength. Refer to the mobile phone's display to determine these items.

TELEPHONE SAFETY (STANDARD SYSTEM)

-  **Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.**
-  **Always stow your mobile phone securely.**
-  **The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.**

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (6 inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

Standard audio system

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION (STANDARD SYSTEM)



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover Bluetooth® system supports Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

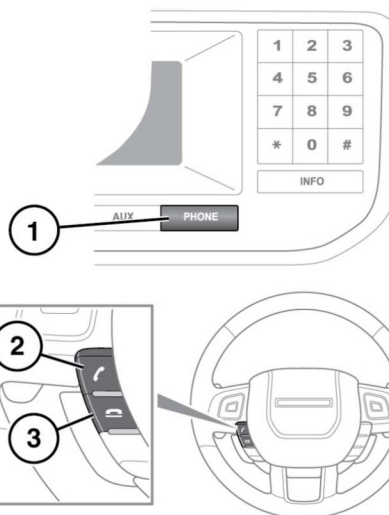
Note: HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

Before making use of the vehicle's Bluetooth phone system, your Bluetooth phone must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. This is done via your mobile phone.

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

STANDARD TELEPHONE CONTROLS



E150354

1. Press to activate or deactivate telephone mode.
2. Press to answer a call or to dial a number.
3. Press to end a call or to reject an incoming call.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE (STANDARD SYSTEM)

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle using your mobile phone, will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the audio system is active and that no other phone is currently connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® system.
2. Using the mobile phone, search for Bluetooth® devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

Standard audio system

3. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered (named Range Rover Evoque), select this device from the list.
4. When prompted, enter the Bluetooth® PIN (Personal Identification Number) into the mobile phone. This 4 digit number is randomly generated by the vehicle system and will be displayed on the screen.
5. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, it can dock automatically. If it does not automatically dock, you will have to connect manually with the Land Rover Bluetooth® system, via the mobile phone. Please consult the mobile phone's instructions for further information.

***Note:** Some mobile phones require the Bluetooth® pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.*

ANSWERING/REJECTING/ENDING CALLS

1. Press **PHONE (1)** or the steering wheel control **(2)** to answer an incoming call.
2. To reject or end a call, press the **PHONE (1)** button or the steering wheel control **(3)**.




DIALLING

1. With **PHONE (1)** or the steering wheel control **(2)** selected, use the numeric keypad to enter a telephone number.
2. Press **OK** or the steering wheel control **(3)** to dial the number.



If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio source is suppressed for the duration of the call. Parking aid warnings are not suppressed.

Fuel and refuelling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

-  **Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**
-  **Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures, and electrical sparks.**
-  **Switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players.**


PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

-  Do not use leaded fuels, lead substitutes, or fuel additives.
-  Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by Land Rover.

OCTANE RATING

Your Land Rover requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to achieve optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON, but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause audible engine 'knock' (a metallic rapping noise from the engine) and other driveability problems.

-  Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.



Note: Occasional, light, engine knock experienced while accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.

If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if you hear engine knock while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Land Rover is not responsible. If in doubt seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer in the territory concerned.


Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

-  This vehicle is not suitable for fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.
-  Do not use E85 fuel as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

METHANOL

-  Wherever possible avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage. Vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels is not the responsibility of Land Rover and may not be covered under the warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an Ether based compound derived from Petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

Fuel and refuelling

REFORMULATED GASOLINE

Several petroleum companies have announced the availability of reformulated fuels. These fuels are specially formulated to further reduce vehicle emissions. Land Rover fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain ambient air quality, and encourages the use of reformulated fuel where available.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

- ⚠ Do not use RME (bio-diesel) except in the case of those proprietary diesel fuels which contain a mix of up to 7%. Land Rover vehicles can accept no responsibility for damage caused by using RME in concentrations greater than 7%.

Use only high quality diesel fuel according to EN590 or equivalent.

The quality of diesel fuel is variable, depending on geographic location. Always use premium or the highest quality fuel available in your locality. High quality fuel promotes a longer life for your engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

- ⚠ If you inadvertently fill your vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.
- ⚠ Land Rover can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running your vehicle with petrol or vegetable oil in the fuel tank.

SULPHUR CONTENT

- ⚠ If your vehicle is fitted with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) the maximum Sulphur content must not exceed 0.005%. Using an incorrect fuel will cause serious damage to the DPF.

The Sulphur content of diesel used in Land Rover vehicles should not exceed 0.3% (3000 parts per million).

In some countries diesel will contain higher levels of Sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on engine components. If in doubt contact a local Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

- ⚠ Avoid running out of fuel.
If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (1 gallon) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle will need to be driven 1.5-5 km (1-3 miles) in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

FUEL FILLER FLAP

- ⚠ **Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.**

The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. If a locking fuel filler flap is fitted, make sure the vehicle alarm system is disarmed.
Note: *The fuel filler flap can be opened only when the vehicle alarm is disarmed.*
2. Press the flap to unlatch it. Open the flap until the hinge lock fully engages.


Fuel and refuelling


After refuelling, tighten the cap until it clicks 3 times.


3. To close the filler flap, push the flap until latched closed.


Note: The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.


FUEL FILLER

 **When refuelling make sure all windows, doors, and sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.**

 **Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.**

 **Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.**


 Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.

 If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts-off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.

DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

 **When the misfuelling device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.**

Note: It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The diesel misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with the incorrect fuel.

Diesel engine vehicles in some markets are equipped with a misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the misfuel protection device will activate.

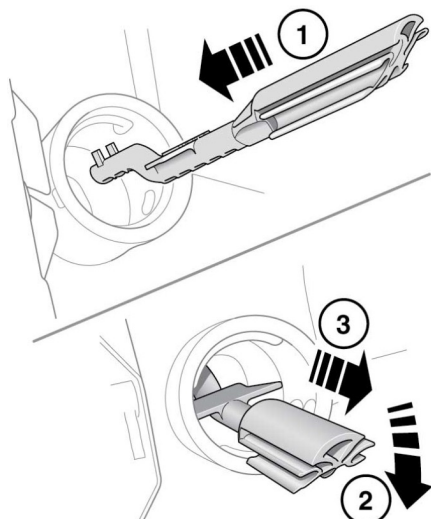
Note: The diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if an unleaded petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.

Note: The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling device.

When activated, the yellow misfuel protector will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel, the device will need to be reset.

The reset tool is located in the luggage compartment.

Fuel and refuelling



Reset the misfuel protection device as follows:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

⚠ Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

Note: The yellow part of the protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.

Return the reset tool to the luggage compartment.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank. See **253, CAPACITIES**.

FUEL SPECIFICATION

Petrol: 91-98 RON.

Diesel: EN 590.

⚠ Diesel vehicles in Algeria, Egypt, Libya, Morocco, India, Pakistan and Tunisia must only use premium diesel fuel.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

See supplementary information for fuel consumption figures.

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4.3 miles).

Fuel and refuelling

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.



For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at:
<http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/>

Maintenance

RUNNING-IN


This vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods but the moving parts of the engine must still bed in relative to one another. The process occurs mainly in the first 3,000 km (2,000 miles) of operation. These guide-lines should be followed during this running-in period to obtain optimum performance.

- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools or similar.
- Do not operate the vehicle at higher engine speeds until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the Service interval indicator in the Message centre. If the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative value (-) to indicate that a service is overdue. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

-  Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the air conditioning are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake/clutch fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate air conditioning.

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

BRAKE PADS

It is recommended that brake pads should be replaced when they reach a minimum thickness of 3mm.

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50°C.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40°C.

Maintenance

- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particle filter have more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by an amber warning lamp, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles) depending on driving conditions. Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is automatically requested by the engine control module if the vehicle is driven steadily at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). It is possible that the regeneration process will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the events may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Note: If regeneration is not successfully carried out, the amber warning lamp will eventually be replaced by a red warning lamp.

Note: If diesel fuel with a high sulphur content is used regularly, when a DPF regeneration cycle starts the exhaust will emit a cloud of smoke. This is the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, use only low sulphur diesel fuel.

If a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by a red warning lamp, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

DRIVING SHORT DISTANCES OR IN COLD WEATHER

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances or in cold weather conditions then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not efficiently cleaned. When the filter reaches a condition when a filter regeneration is appropriate and the current drive style is not appropriate, a warning triangle on the Instrument panel illuminates and the message **DPF Full. See manual** is displayed in the Message centre. This is not indicating a fault condition with the vehicle and no dealership support should be required. Start regeneration of the filter by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes or more.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Note: A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM



No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Maintenance

AIRBAG SYSTEM



The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system always consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, 2-way radio or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES



The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle warranty.



Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury or damage to property which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Land Rover vehicles.



All replacement parts for the air conditioning system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment while complying with the SAE Standards. Contact a Dealer/Authorized Repairer for advice.



This symbol may be used on an under bonnet label and is relevant to the air conditioning refrigerant fluid. The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire in contact with air.

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

It is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out only by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by Dealers/ Authorised Repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE








If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.



Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.

Maintenance

-  **Never work or allow any person to place any part of their body beneath a vehicle supported by a jack.**
-  **Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped. They may also start to operate after the engine is turned off and continue operating for up to 10 minutes.**
-  **Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.**
-  **Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.**
-  **Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.**

POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

For your own safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

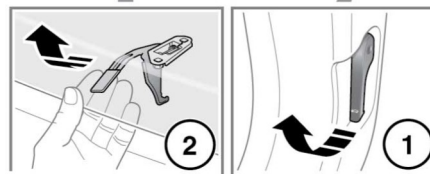
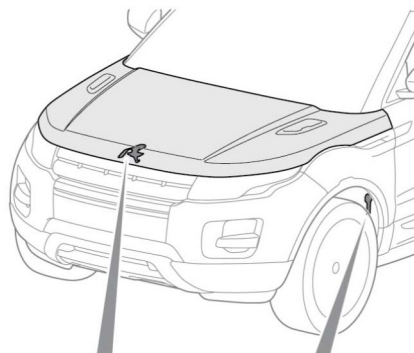
USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

OPENING THE BONNET



E150367

1. Pull the bonnet release lever, located in the left side front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch, located below the centre point of the bonnet, then raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

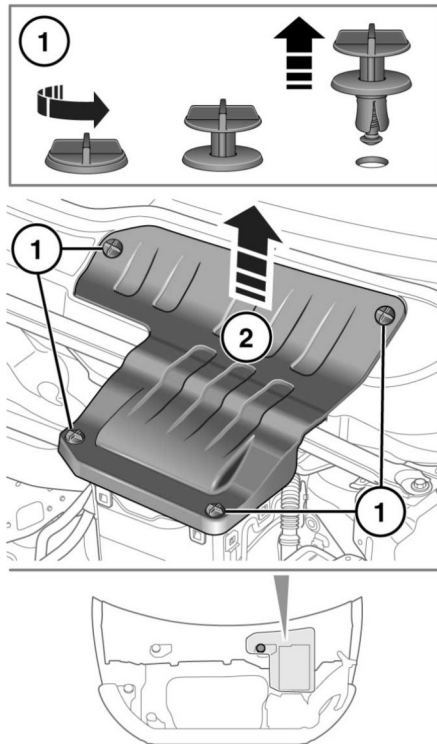
-  **Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.**

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages.
2. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
3. Check that both catches are engaged by trying to lift the front edge of the bonnet.

Maintenance

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL

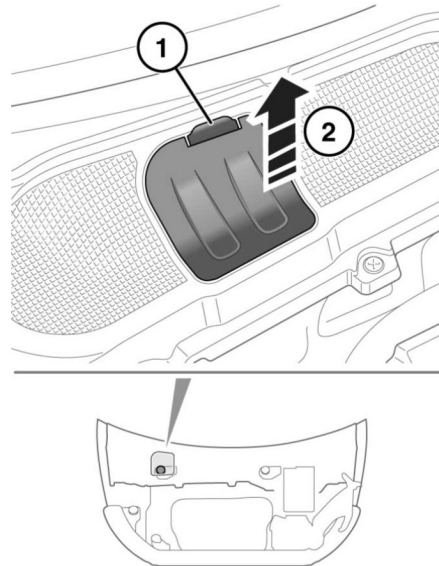
Left side under bonnet cover



E153608

1. Unscrew the turnbuckles clips counter clockwise and remove.
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide forward to remove.

Right side under bonnet cover



E153609

1. Pull the cover securing catch towards the front of the vehicle to release.
2. While still holding the cover securing catch, lift up the edge of the cover to remove.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING

Left side under bonnet cover



Before refitting the under bonnet cover, make sure no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and the casing.




1. Place the under bonnet cover over the casing, making sure all holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly and screw the turnbuckle clips clockwise to tighten.

Maintenance

Right side under bonnet cover

1. Place the 2 locating lugs at the rear edge of the cover into the surrounding panel.
2. Press the cover down to engage the cover securing catch.


FUEL SYSTEM

-  Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or renewed by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.
-  Make sure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.
-  Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control systems. In many countries it is unlawful to tamper, modify or renew such equipment and legal penalties apply if the laws are flouted.




Dealers/Authorised Repairers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain these systems.

-  **Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.**
- Do not inhale exhaust gases.
- Do not start or leave the engine running in an enclosed unventilated area.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Do not modify the exhaust system.
- Exhaust leaks should be repaired immediately.

- If exhaust fumes are thought to be entering the vehicle, have it investigated immediately.

Note: Running out of fuel can result in a misfire. This can cause damage to the emission control system.

CHANGING A BULB


-  If the lighting has just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.
-  Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice. See **256, BULB SPECIFICATION**.
-  Before attempting a bulb change, make sure the ignition and affected lamp are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Not all bulbs are renewable. The following bulbs can be renewed:

- Headlamps.
- Direction indicators.
- Reversing lamp.
- Rear fog lamp.
- Some interior lamps.

All other exterior lamps and some interior lamps are LED (Light Emitting Diode) lamps and can only be renewed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

All replacement procedures require the removal of components to gain access to the bulbs.

-  Moving a headlamp unit should be undertaken only by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Maintenance

Note: To change any bulb in a headlamp unit, a cross head screwdriver and a 10 mm spanner is required.

XENON LAMPS



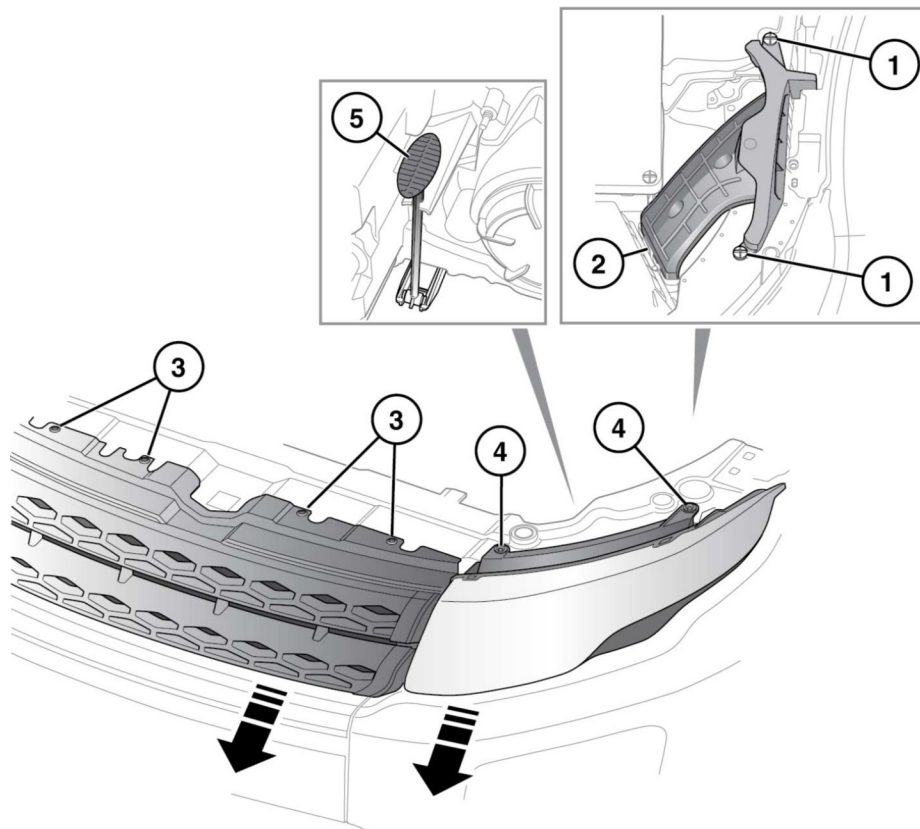
High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power Xenon lamps. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.



Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

Maintenance

HEADLAMP REMOVAL

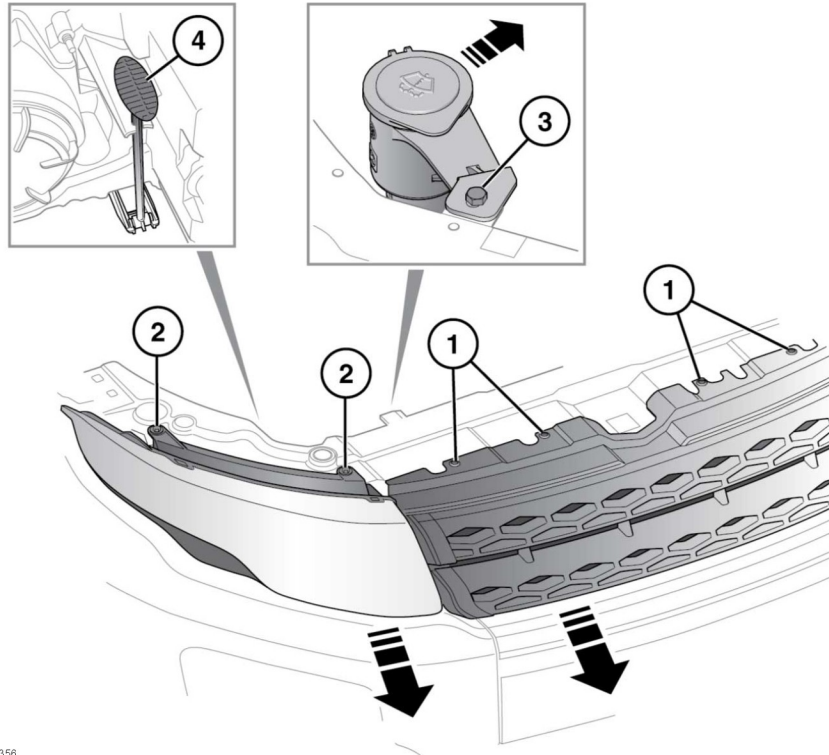


E150355

Moving the left headlamp unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the 2 plastic fixings.
2. Pull the tube up to release from the air box. This will allow more room for manoeuvrability.
3. Remove the 4 grille fixings.
4. Remove the 2 retaining bolts.
5. At the rear of the headlamp unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlamp unit forward 40 mm (1.5 inches).

Maintenance

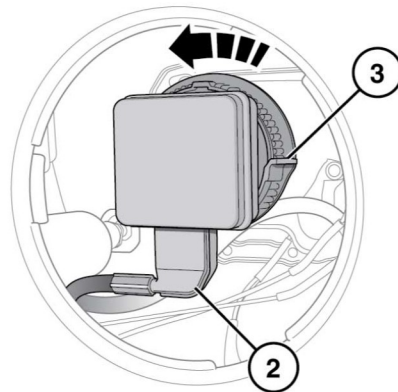
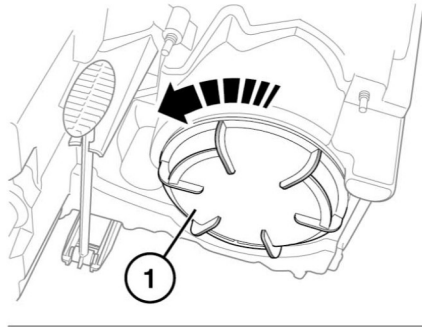


E150356

Moving the right headlamp unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the 4 grille fixings.
2. Remove the 2 retaining bolts.
3. Remove the fixing and then move the filler tube rearwards. This will allow more room for access to the bulb holders.
4. At the rear of the headlamp unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlamp unit forward 40 mm (1.5 inches).

Maintenance

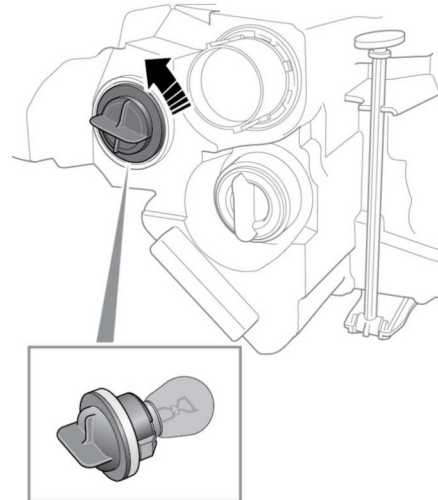


E150357

Removing a headlamp bulb:

1. At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the cover. Turn it counter clockwise to release.
2. The back of the bulb unit will now be exposed. Pull down on the electrical connector to release it from the bulb unit.
3. Turn the retaining collar counter clockwise to release the bulb. Remove the bulb unit from the housing.

DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT

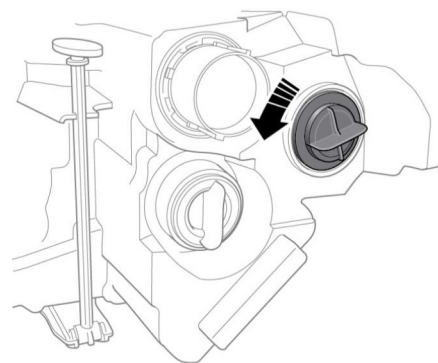


E156198

Removing the left side bulb:

To gain more room for accessibility, follow steps 1 and 2 for moving the left side headlamp unit.

At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the indicator bulb housing, turn it counter clockwise to release.



E156199

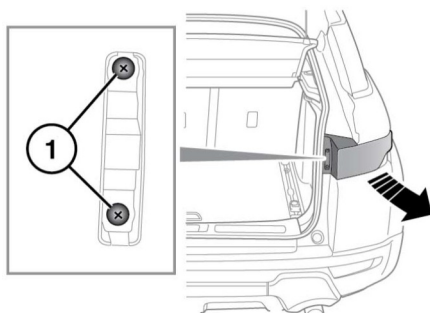
Maintenance

Removing the right side bulb:

To gain more room for accessibility, follow the process for moving the right side headlamp unit.

At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the indicator bulb housing, turn it counter clockwise to release.

REAR DIRECTION INDICATOR AND REVERSING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



E150361

1. Remove the 2 fixings.

2. Direction indicator:

- To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
- Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.
- Refitting is a reverse of the removal process. Make sure the connector lock is pressed down and that the bulb unit locates securely into the fog lamp housing.

Note: Inside the bulb holder are three locating lugs. When fitting the new bulb unit, the lugs must align correctly to the connector.

3. Reversing lamp:

Turn the bulb holder counter clockwise and pull to remove it from the lamp unit. Grip the holder then press the bulb into the holder and turn counter clockwise to release the bulb. Pull the bulb up to remove.

REAR FOG LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.



Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles, select 1st or reverse gear on manual vehicles.



Switch on the hazard warning lamps.



Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.



Disconnect trailer/caravan from vehicle.



Make sure all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.

Maintenance



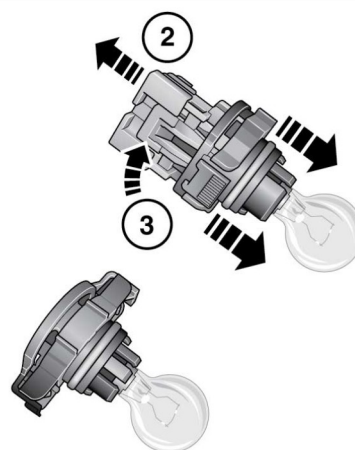
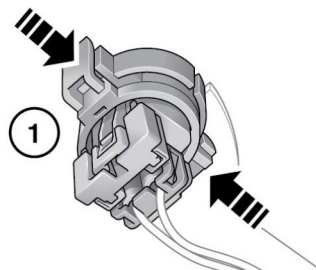
If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust system components until they have cooled.

Access to a rear fog lamp housing is from beneath and behind the rear bumper. The bulb holder is a black plastic unit that incorporates the bulb. No tools are required but a torch may be of use.

1. To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
2. To separate the bulb holder from the electrical connector, first push up the connector lock.
3. Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.

Note: Inside the bulb holder are 3 locating lugs. When fitting the new bulb unit, the lugs must mate up to the connector correctly.

Refitting is a reverse of the removal process. Make sure the connector lock is pressed down and that the bulb unit locates securely into the fog lamp housing.



E150362

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

Before changing a front wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

Note: The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being renewed.

1. Make sure the ignition is turned off.
2. Turn the ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately push the wiper control down to start the single wipe operation and turn the ignition on again.

The wipers will move to their service position.

Maintenance

4. When the new parts have been fitted, turn the ignition off. This will return the wipers to the park position.

WINDOW RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted, the windows must be reset.

Once the power supply is restored, reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

Vehicle cleaning

THE EXTERIOR

- ❗ Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose before washing the vehicle.
- ❗ Never aim a hose water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals or at any components which may be damaged.
- ❗ Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.
- ❗ Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.
- ❗ Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings and tree resin, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.
- ❗ Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles.
- ❗ Camera lenses must be treated with care. Clean with a low pressure hose and wipe with a damp cloth.

Stubborn stains such as tar spots and grease on the paintwork may require the use of white spirit. After use, make sure the area is washed immediately with warm soapy water to remove all traces of the spirit.

Note: Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of the bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.

SENSORS

- ❗ When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

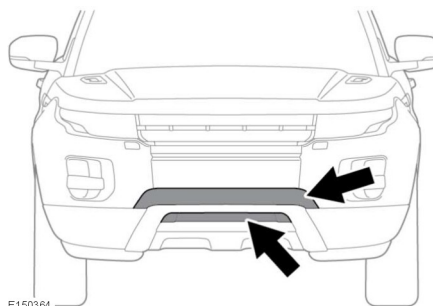
Park assist and Parking aids sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the underbody with plain water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING



- ❗ Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Make sure the vehicle underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

Vehicle cleaning

ALLOY WHEELS

- ⓘ Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

THE INTERIOR

- ⚠ **Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly and may cause damage to the vehicle interior. Make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.**

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ⓘ Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

Dynamica suede fabric should be cleaned regularly. Do not rub vigorously and do not use a steam machine. Dusting with a soft brush, a dry cloth or vacuum cleaner will be sufficient.

Do not use printed absorbent cloths or paper as they may transfer colour to the fabric.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

- ⓘ Use only cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use solvents. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products which are not approved will invalidate your warranty.
- ⓘ If you are in any doubt as to which products to use, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Leather should be cleaned and protected using Land Rover approved leather cleaner.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover approved leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Vehicle cleaning


Use Land Rover approved leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zipper fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.
- Do not use a cleaning product that is not specifically for use in a vehicle. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

If a valet service is used, make sure the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

Note: *Some materials/fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*



SEAT BELTS

-  **Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.**

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

Note: *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by your Dealer/Approved Repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS



-  **Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.**
-  **Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.**

CARPET AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM

-  Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.
-  When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.
- Clean with a lightly moistened cloth.
 - Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.

Vehicle cleaning

- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only 1 finger at a time is in contact with the Touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

BLOCKED WASHER JETS



Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment.

Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

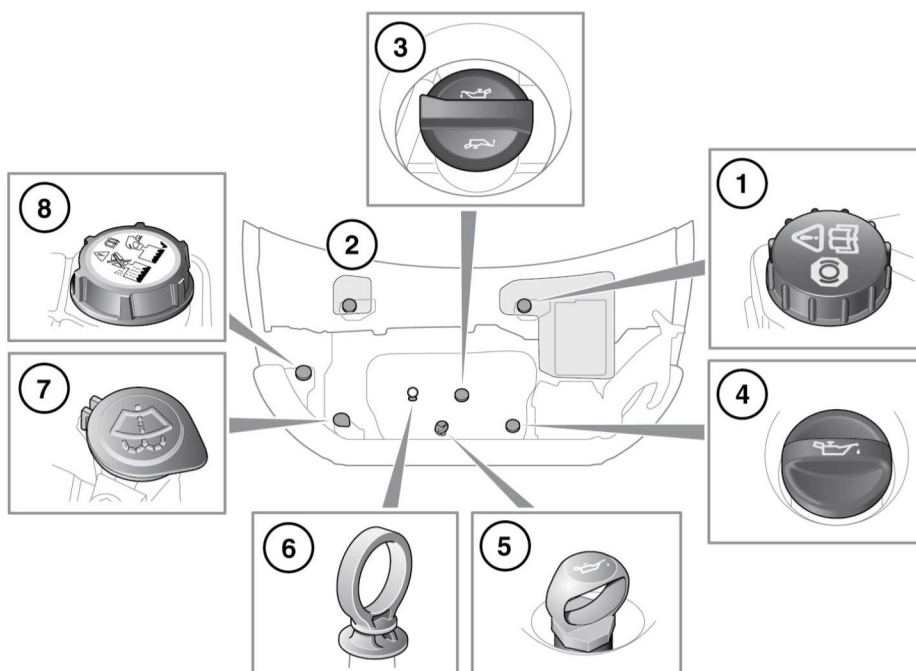
If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

Fluid level checks

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS



E153613

1. Brake fluid reservoir cap (left hand drive). Remove the left side Under bonnet cover for access. See **196, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap (right hand drive). Remove the right side Under bonnet cover for access. See **196, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
3. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L petrol engine).
4. Engine oil filler cap (2.2L diesel engine).
5. Oil level dipstick (2.2L diesel engine).
6. Oil level dipstick (2.0L petrol engine).
7. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
8. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.



While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See **194, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE**.



Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if there is a possibility that any leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL



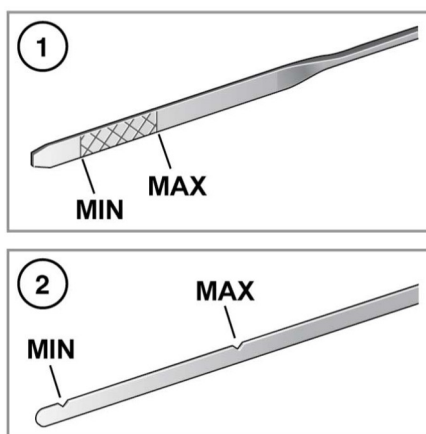
Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.



Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.

Fluid level checks

- ❗ If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.



E150369

1. Engine oil dipstick - 2.0L petrol engine.
2. Engine oil dipstick - 2.2L diesel engine.

Prior to checking the oil level make sure that:

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

Note: If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

As a general guide, if the oil level on the dipstick:

1. Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, do not add oil.
2. Is nearer to the lower mark or notch than the upper, add 0.5 litre (1 pint) of oil.
3. Is below the lower mark or notch, add for the diesel engine, 1.5 litre (2.6 pints) of oil and for the petrol engine, 0.8 litre (1.4 pints) of oil. Re-check the level after a further 5 minutes.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

- ❗ Your vehicle warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.
- ❗ Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. See **252, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
- ❗ Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level re-checked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.
1. Remove the oil filler cap.
 2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.
- ❗ It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

Fluid level checks

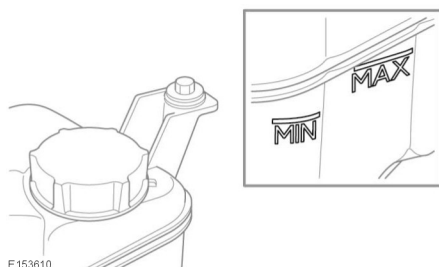
Note: The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the petrol engine dipstick is 0.85 litres (1.5 pints) and on the diesel engine dipstick is 1.5 litres (2.6 pints).

3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping-up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. Refit the oil filler cap.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

- ⚠ Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.
- ⚠ If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.



Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

- ⚠ **Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.**



Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.



Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine) - a fire may result.



Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.



When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.



The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine cooling system and therefore engine durability.



Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Fluid level checks


Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% \pm 5% all year round (not just in cold conditions). To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every ten years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C (-40°F).

1. Remove the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating counter clockwise.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **252, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Note: *In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt consult a qualified technician.*

3. Refit the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks.

CHECKING THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

 **Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.**



Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.



If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.



Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine).



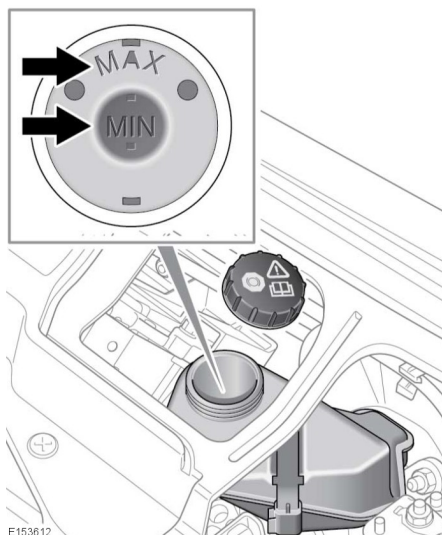
Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **43, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).

Fluid level checks



1. Remove the relevant under bonnet cover. See 209, **FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and 196, **UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
2. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
3. Remove the reservoir filler cap by rotating counter clockwise.
4. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note: The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

- ! Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See 252, **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

- ! Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.
- ! Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used).
- ! Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been renewed. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

1. Top up the brake fluid reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
2. Refit the brake fluid reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise.
3. Refit the under bonnet cover. See 196, **UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING**.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

- ! Do not allow the screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.
- ! If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.
- ! Only use approved washer fluid.
- ! Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets and the headlamp washer jets.

Fluid level checks

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets and headlamp washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

Vehicle battery

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE



If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin/eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.



If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal, seek medical assistance immediately.



Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.



The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.



Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.



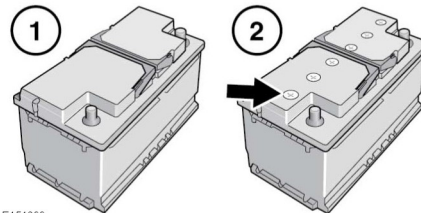
Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks, and/or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.



Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.



E151699

Your vehicle is fitted with either an Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) (1) battery or a low maintenance (2) battery.

Note: AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

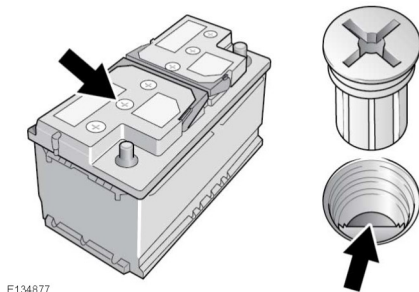
L

Vehicle battery

- ⚠ Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

In hot climates more frequent checks of the low maintenance battery electrolyte level and condition are required. If necessary, the battery cells can be topped up using distilled water.

To check the electrolyte level, first remove the battery cover. See **196, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.



1. Unscrew the 6 battery cell plugs and store carefully.
2. Check the surface level of the liquid (electrolyte) in each cell is level with the plastic level indicator. If necessary, top up with distilled water.

- ⚠ Do not over fill the battery.
- 3. Refit the 6 battery cell plugs.

4. Refit the battery cover. See **196, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING**.

- ⚠ The battery cover must be refitted as soon as possible to make sure the battery positive terminal is insulated.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

- ⚠ Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

- ⚠ Before attempting to start the disabled vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park is selected or the manual gearbox is in neutral.

- ⚠ Always wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.

- ⚠ Never jump start, charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

- ⚠ During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the engine compartment.

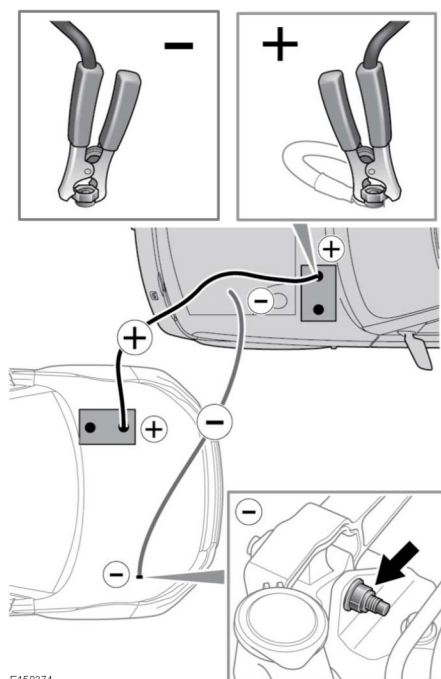
- ⚠ Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles other than the jump leads.

- ⚠ Make sure that the slave battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

- ⚠ Disconnect the jump leads prior to operating any electrical equipment.

Note: Before connecting jump leads make sure the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.

Vehicle battery



1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the recommended positive (+) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

Note: Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
3. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the recommended negative (-) boost terminal of the donor vehicle.

Note: Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.

4. Connect the other end of the negative (Black) jump lead to the earth point on the disabled vehicle (as illustrated).

Note: Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all 4 connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Note: Do not switch on any electrical circuits of the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the previously discharged battery.
12. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given.

1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the vehicle earth point.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

Vehicle battery

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal, therefore battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Battery disconnection, removal and renewal should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Battery disconnection, removal and renewal should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power prior to disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger depending on its state when the battery was disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the Smart key in the normal way to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system will begin to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that battery condition is not within set parameters, there are 2 levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the Touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the Message centre.

- **Energy Management:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen if the engine is not running, and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen and Message centre if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.



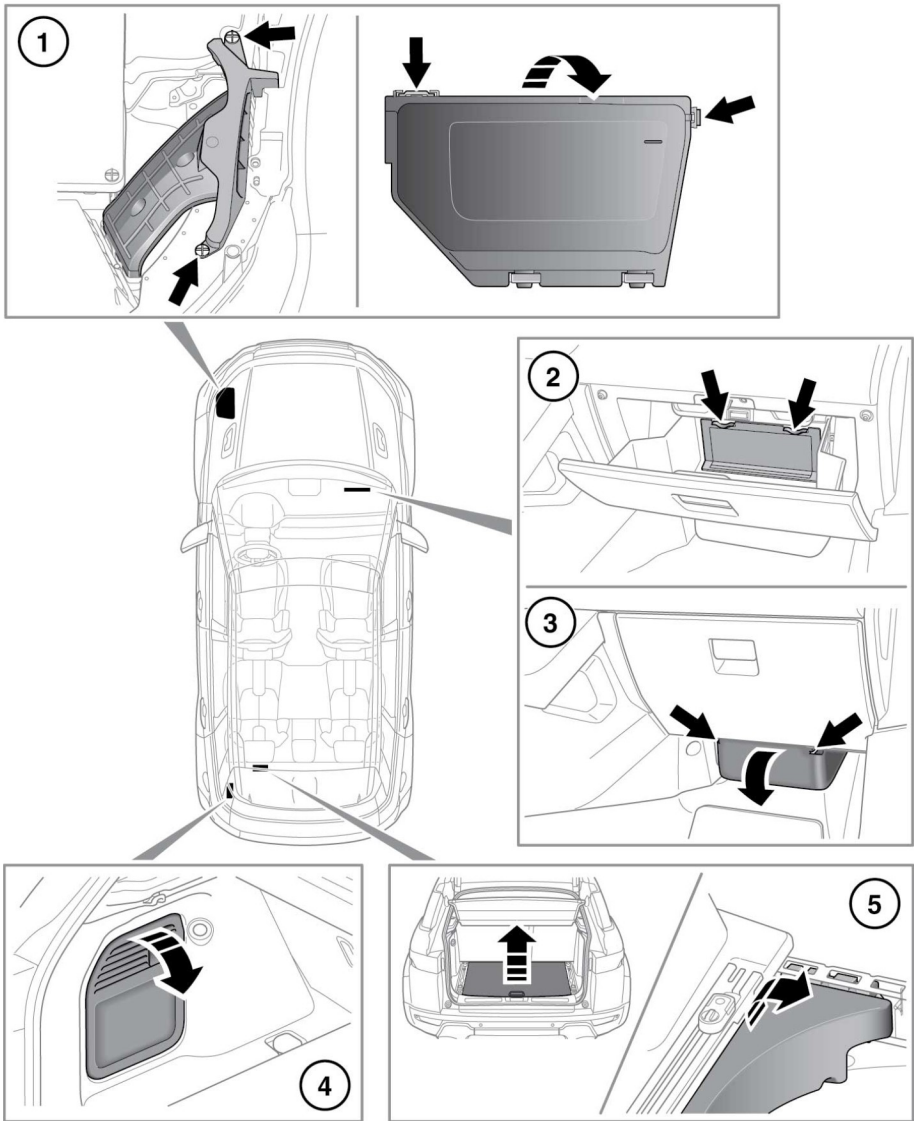
Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Vehicle battery

Note: *If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C (32°F) or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 0°C (32°F). This will allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, re-start the engine. If problems still exist, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E165770



When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture,

and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

Fuses

Access can be gained to the fuses as follows:

- 1. Engine compartment fuse box.
 - To gain access to the fuse box: Remove the 2 plastic fixings (see illustration) and pull the tube up to release it from the air box.
 - Unlatch the tabs (arrowed) to release the fuse box cover.
The engine compartment fuse numbers and positions are shown on the inside of the fuse box cover.
- 2. Passenger compartment fuse box (upper): Open the glove box and remove the panel from the glove box liner. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
- 3. Passenger compartment fuse box (lower): Remove the lower access panel.
- 4. Luggage compartment (upper and lower) fuse boxes: Remove the panel from the left side trim of the luggage compartment. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
- 5. Luggage compartment (underfloor) fuse box (if fitted): Lift the luggage compartment floor and remove the spare wheel/tyre repair kit housing (see illustration). The fuse numbers are displayed on the fuse box.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	5	Tan	Starter motor sensor
2	5	Tan	Voltage quality module
3*	80	-	Cooling fans
4*	60	-	Diesel - Glow plugs
5*	80	-	Electric power assisted steering (EPAS)

CHANGING A FUSE

- ⚠ Always turn off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.
- ⚠ Fit Land Rover approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.
- ⚠ If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Land Rover recommend that relays should only be renewed by qualified persons.

The fuse removal tweezers are located in the passenger compartment fuse box. Press the tweezers onto the head of a fuse and pull to remove. A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has blown and must be renewed.

There are some spare replacement fuses in the passenger compartment fuse box. See the fuse box label for details.

L

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
6	15	Blue	Oxygen sensors
7	5	Tan	Engine management, Air conditioning (A/C) compressor clutch, Intelligent stop/start motor
8	20	Yellow	Diesel and Petrol - Engine management control unit
9	10	Red	Diesel - Engine sensors
10	-	-	-
11	10	Red	Diesel and Petrol - Engine sensors
12	15	Blue	Diesel - Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) bypass, water in fuel sensor
			Petrol - Ignition coils
13	10	Red	A/C compressor clutch
14	15	Blue	Diesel - Engine sensors
15*	40	Green	Starter motor
16*	100	-	PTC heater
17*	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box
18*	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box
19*	60	-	Luggage compartment fuse box
20*	60	-	Luggage compartment fuse box
21*	60	-	Voltage quality module, Luggage compartment fuse box
22*	30	Pink	Front wipers
23*	40	Green	Passenger compartment fuse box
24	-	-	-
25	-	-	-
26*	40	Green	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)
27*	40	Green	Passenger compartment fuse box
28*	40	Green	Heater blower
29*	30	Pink	Electric trailer brake (Australia)
30	15	Blue	Headlamp washer
31	15	Blue	Horns
32	20	Yellow	Anti-lock braking system (ABS)
33	5	Tan	Relay coils - Horn, Heated front screen, Fuel pump, Extended ignition
34*	40	Green	Heated front screen - left side

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
35*	40	Green	Heated front screen - right side
36	-	-	-
37	20	Yellow	Fuel pump
38	5	Tan	Steering wheel module
39	5	Tan	Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
40	5	Tan	Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) - Right headlamp
41	5	Tan	Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)- Left headlamp
42	5	Tan	Headlamp control, Dynamic headlamp levelling control unit
43	5	Tan	Rear view camera, Climate/Heated seat relay coils
44	10	Red	Heated steering wheel
45	-	-	-

*Land Rover recommends that these fuses should only be serviced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	5	Tan	Smart key receiver, Alarm sensor, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
2	-	-	-
3	10	Red	Front fog lamps
4	-	-	-
5	5	Tan	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)
6	5	Tan	Adaptive dynamics, Electric differential control module (E-diff)
7	-	-	-
8	25	Clear	Passenger door module
9	5	Tan	Electric parking brake
10	5	Tan	Heated washer jets
11	10	Red	Trailer reverse lights
12	5	Tan	Reverse lights

(FM10) SEMCON LAND ROVER OWNER GUIDE VER 2.00 EURO
LANGUAGE: english-en; MARQUE: landrover; MODEL: Range
Rover Evoque

L

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
13	-	-	-
14	5	Tan	Brake pedal switch
15	30	Green	Heated rear screen
16	5	Tan	Electric power steering
17	5	Tan	Keyless entry control module
18	-	-	-
19	5	Tan	Engine management control module
20	5	Tan	Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
21	5	Tan	PTC heater control unit, Centre console switch, Outboard fascia switch
22	5	Tan	Automatic transmission
23	-	-	-
24	5	Tan	Right rear fog lamp
25	5	Tan	Left rear fog lamp
26	-	-	-
27	-	-	-
28	-	-	-
29	-	-	-
30	-	-	-
31	5	Tan	Rain sensor, Auxiliary lamp switch, Voltage quality module, Humidity sensor
32	25	Clear	Driver door module
33	-	-	-
34	10	Red	Fuel flap locking, Fuel flap unlocking
35	-	-	-
36	5	Tan	Battery backed sounder
37	20	Yellow	Keyless entry control module
38	15	Blue	Front screen washer
39	25	Clear	Left rear door module
40	5	Tan	Driver door window switch
41	-	-	-
42	30	Green	Driver front seat
43	15	Blue	Rear screen washer

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
44	25	Clear	Right rear door module
45	30	Green	Front passenger seat
46	-	-	-
47	20	Yellow	Sunblind control unit
48	15	Blue	Trailer connector power supply
49	-	-	-
50	-	-	-
51	5	Tan	Steering wheel switches
52	20	Yellow	Cigar lighter
53	20	Yellow	Cubby box accessory power socket
54	-	-	-
55	20	Yellow	Rear console accessory power socket
56	10	Red	Supplementary Restraint system (SRS)
57	10	Red	Interior lamps
58	-	-	-
59	-	-	-
60	5	Tan	Occupancy sensor, Passenger airbag disabling lamp
61	5	Tan	Start control unit
62	-	-	-
63	20	Yellow	Luggage compartment accessory power socket
64	-	-	-
65	-	-	-
66	5	Tan	Diagnostics
67	15	Blue	Trailer
68	-	-	-
69	15	Blue	Automatic transmission

L

Fuses

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Upper fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB1	5	Tan	Adaptive dynamics
FB2	5	Tan	Electric differential control module (E-diff)
FB3	10	Red	Message centre
FB4	5	Tan	Gateway module
FB5	30	Green	Adaptive dynamics
FB6	25	Clear	Powered tailgate
FB7	5	Tan	Auxiliary heater receiver
FB8	5	Tan	Driver/passenger seat switches
FB9	-	-	-
FB10	10	Red	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM), Rear view camera
FB11	40	Green	Audio amplifier
FB12	-	-	-

Upper fuse box (vehicles without an underfloor fuse box)

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB1	5	Tan	Adaptive dynamics
FB2	-	-	-
FB3	10	Red	Message centre
FB4	5	Tan	Gateway module
FB5	30	Green	Adaptive dynamics
FB6	25	Clear	Powered tailgate
FB7	5	Tan	Auxiliary heater receiver
FB8	5	Tan	Driver/passenger seat switches
FB9	-	-	-
FB10	10	Red	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM), Rear view camera
FB11	40	Green	Audio amplifier

Fuses

Lower fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA1	30	Green	Electric differential control module (E-diff)
FA2	15	Blue	Rear wiper
FA3	5	Tan	Electric differential control module (E-diff)
FA4	10	Red	Road telematics
FA5	20	Yellow	Driver's heated/climate seat
FA6	20	Yellow	Passenger's heated/climate seat
FA7	5	Tan	Wade sensing module
FA8	5	Tan	Interior dimming mirror/High beam assist
FA9	20	Yellow	Left side rear heated seat
FA10	20	Yellow	Right side rear heated seat
FA11	30	Pink	Electric Parking Brake (EPB)
FA12	30	Pink	Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

Lower fuse box (vehicles without an underfloor fuse box)

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA1	10	Red	Touch screen
FA2	15	Blue	Audio system
FA3	10	Red	Digital radio, TV, Navigation module
FA4	15	Blue	Rear seat entertainment
FA5	10	Red	Audio amplifier
FA6	-	-	-
FA7	-	-	-
FA8	5	Tan	Interior dimming mirror/high beam assist
FA9	15	Blue	Rear wiper
FA10	15	Blue	Heating and ventilation system
FA11	30	Pink	Electric Parking Brake (EPB)
FA12	30	Pink	Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

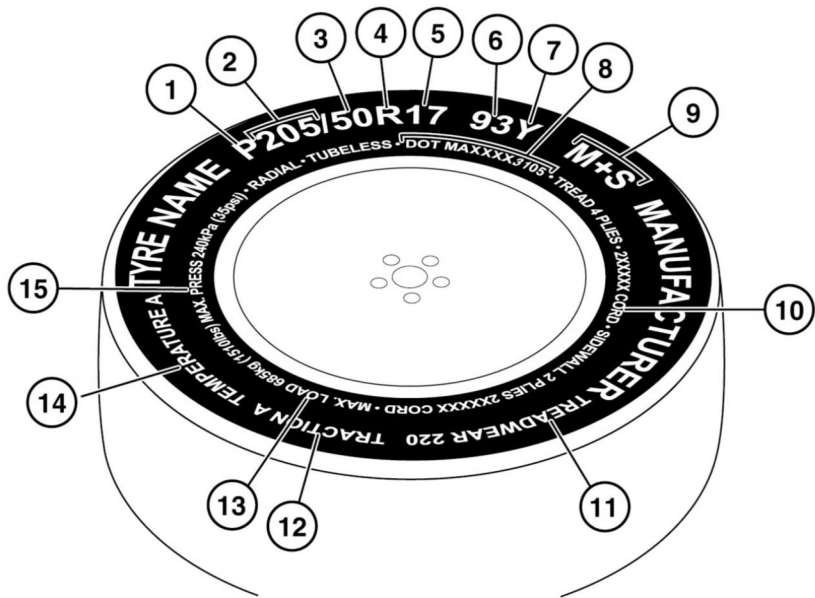
Fuses

Underfloor fuse box (if fitted)

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue	Touch screen, Front integrated control panel
2	10	Red	Audio amplifier
3	-	-	-
4	10	Red	Navigation, Television tuner
5	15	Blue	Audio head unit
6	15	Blue	Audio video input/output panel
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	-	-	-
10	-	-	-
11	-	-	-
12	-	-	-
13	-	-	-
14	-	-	-
15	15	Blue	Front and rear integrated control panels-heating and ventilation
16	20	Yellow	Fuel fired booster heater

Tyres

TYRE MARKINGS



E153418

- 1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
- 2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in millimetres.
- 3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
- 4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
- 5. The diameter of the wheel rim given (in inches).
- 6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.



The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

- 7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre should be used for extended periods. See **230, SPEED RATING**.
- 8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture etc. The last 4 numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 5111, the tyre was made in the 51st week of 2011.

L

Tyres






9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator. A tyre rated at 400 for example, will last longer than a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyres performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA, A, B** and **C**.
13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading. The tyre resistance to heat is grade **A, B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. See **234, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE


-  Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.
-  Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tyre.
-  Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.
-  If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow for example), do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer.
-  Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.


Note: Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.


All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.


Tyres


TYRE PRESSURES


- 

All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.
- 

Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.
- 

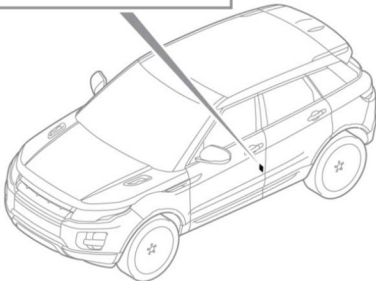
Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. This can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear and poor handling.
- 

Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Renew the tyre or contact an approved repairer.
- 

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- 

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.

LAND ROVER		i		h		h	
		kPa	bar	psi	kPa	bar	psi
XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX
XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX
XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX
XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX
XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX/XXX/XXX/XXX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX	XXX	XX
XXX-XXX-XX							



E153419

The tyre information label is located on the driver's side B pillar.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

Dependent on market, the tyre pressures can be displayed in the Message centre using the **Vehicle Info** and **Tyre Pressure Check** Instrument panel menus. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The display will show 2 tyre pressures for each tyre. The upper figure is the present tyre pressure and the lower figure (in brackets) is the recommended tyre pressure.

Note: The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either psi, bar, or kPa via the **Instrument Display menu**.

Tyres

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g. a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 14 kPa (0.14bar/2 psi) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 30 - 40 kPa (0.3 - 0.4 bar/4 - 6 psi). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre pressures:



To avoid damaging the valves do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge/inflator.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

Temporary use spare - maximum 80 km/h (50 mph)			
Tyre size	Load/speed index	Front pressures bar (psi. kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi. kPa)
155/85 R18	-	4.2 (61, 420)	4.2 (61, 420)

Tyre size	Load/speed index	Front pressures bar (psi. kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi. kPa)
225/65 R17*	106V	2.4 (35, 240)	2.1 (30, 210)
235/60 R18	103/107V	2.4 (35, 240)	2.1 (30, 210)
235/55 R19	101/105V	2.5 (36, 250)	2.2 (32, 220)
245/45 R20**	99/103V	2.5 (36, 250)	2.2 (32, 220)

* Retailer option wheel and tyre for use with snow chains or traction devices.

Tyres

** If your vehicle is fitted with 245/45 R20 tyres, then the vehicle will be delivered with the tyre pressures set as stated on the tyre pressures label in order to optimise low speed ride comfort. For vehicle speeds in excess of 160km/h (100mph), the pressures must be increased as indicated in the following table.

245/45 R20 Tyres	Front pressures bar (psi. kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi. kPa)
Speeds up to 160 km/h (100 mph)	2.5 (36, 250)	2.2 (32, 220)
Speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph)	2.7 (39, 270)	2.4 (35, 240)

Note: Make sure to reset the tyre pressures to the correct pressure when the vehicle will be travelling at speeds less than 160 km/h (100 mph).

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures. For TPMS tyre valves, see 237, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM.

REPLACEMENT TYRES

- Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.
- The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If lower speed rated specialist tyres are fitted (e.g. winter tyres or off road tyres) then the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult your Land Rover dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyres maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.

- Do not rotate the tyres around the vehicle.
- If the use of tyres not recommended by Land Rover is unavoidable, make sure you read, and fully comply with, the tyre manufacturer's instructions.
- Tyre removal and fitting should be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.
- When removing a tyre from a wheel or fitting a tyre to a wheel, make sure the TPMS sensor is not damaged.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread as a visual reminder.

Tyres

Tyres should be renewed in sets of 4. If this is not possible, renew the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are renewed, the wheels should always be re-balanced and alignment checked.

For the correct tyre specification and pressures, see **231, TYRE PRESSURES**. Alternatively contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

Replacement TPMS sensor

If a new TPMS sensor is to be fitted to a standard size running wheel on the vehicle, it should be installed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The vehicle needs to be stationary for 15 minutes during the sensor fitment before the system is ready to detect the new sensor. The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 15 minutes after the sensor change, and then remain stationary for 15 minutes to activate full TPMS operation.

If the TPMS warning lamp does not extinguish, even after checking the tyre pressures and driving for more than ten minutes above 25 km/h (16 mph), seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum as stated on the tyre sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **231, TYRE PRESSURES**.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are renewed at least every 6 years, but they may require renewing more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be renewed. The **M+S** marking on the tyre sidewall indicates an 'all season' tyre designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow and ice.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Tyres

Note: A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must therefore be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult your Land Rover dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable for use below 160 km/h (100 mph).

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads before driving on snow or ice.

Land Rover approved winter tyre sizes	
17 inch wheels	225/65 R17
	235/65 R17
18 inch wheels	235/60 R18
20 inch wheels	245/45 R20 *




Note: *Studded tyres are market dependent. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The Message centre will also display **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

USING SNOW CHAINS

-  Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.
-  Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.
-  Never fit traction devices to a temporary use spare wheel.

Land Rover approved traction devices may be used to improve traction on compacted snow in heavy snow conditions. They should not be used in off-road conditions.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices where there is no compacted snow, the following points must be observed:

- Only Land Rover approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Land Rover approved traction devices have been tested to make sure they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the vehicle's original equipment.
- Do not fit traction devices to 18, 19 or 20 inch diameter wheels.
- Single sided Spike-spyder traction devices or snow chains can be fitted to only the front wheels of vehicles fitted with 17 inch diameter wheels.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Always read, understand and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.

Tyres




- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

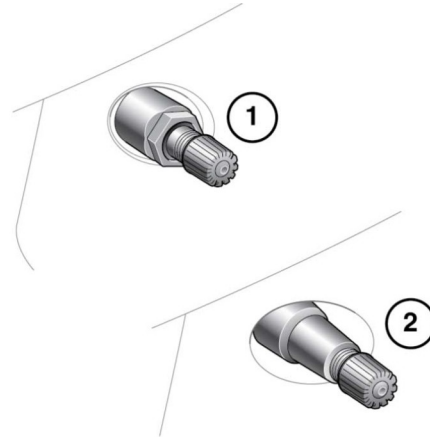
TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

-  TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.
-  TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.
-  When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always confirm the correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem.

Note: Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always renew tyres in accordance with recommendations.

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel, including the full size spare. Temporary use spare tyres are not monitored. See **238, TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.



E132513

Wheels fitted with TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

Note: At each tyre change, a special service kit is required for each TPMS valve.

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold and adjusted as necessary. The presence of TPMS does not remove the need to check tyre pressures as part of a vehicle safety check. See **231, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when 1 or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated, accompanied with a message in the Message centre. See **46, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure.

TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE** is displayed, accompanied by the illumination of the warning lamp.

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

Vehicles supplied with 245/45/R20 tyres, will also have a speed based TPMS. If the vehicle is required to travel at speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph), the tyre pressures should be raised. See **231, TYRE PRESSURES**. Failure to do this may cause the warning message **TYRE PRESSURES LOW FOR SPEED** to be displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Make sure to re-set the tyre pressures to the correct pressure when the vehicle will be travelling at speeds less than 160 km/h (100 mph).*

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The system will automatically recognise any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (18 mph) any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE


If the temporary use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (18 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Tyre repair kit

TYRE REPAIR KIT



-  If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before attempting the repair.

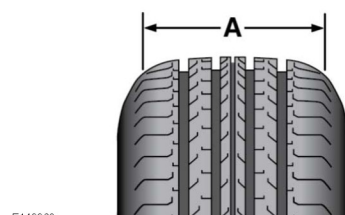
Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre. If this is the case, in its place in the rear underfloor storage compartment, you will find a tyre repair kit. The tyre repair kit can be used to repair 1 tyre and it is essential that you read the following guide before attempting to repair a tyre.

The tyre repair kit seals most punctures, with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 inch), within the tread area.

Note: The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is renewed before the expiry date.

TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION

-  Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.



E149963

-  Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.
-  Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.
-  The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).
-  When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.
-  Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.
-  Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended when in use.
-  Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.
-  Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit when in use.
-  Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.
-  Check the tyre sidewall before inflating. If any cracks, damage or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.
-  Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

-  Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex.

Tyre repair kit

- ⚠ Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.
- ⚠ Make sure the parking brake is applied and Park (P) is selected. Select 1st or reverse gear for vehicles with a manual transmission.
- ⚠ Do not attempt to remove foreign objects such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.
- ⚠ Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.
- ⚠ To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

REPAIR PROCEDURE

- ⚠ **Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

- ⚠ **If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within a maximum of 10 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible, and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been renewed.**

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver in a clockwise direction until tight.

Note: Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve making sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure the compressor switch is in the Off (0) position, then insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. See 76, **AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.
Switch on the ignition. See 83, **SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
Alternatively, if the vehicle is not in a confined space the engine can be started.
8. Switch on the compressor by positioning the switch to the (I) position.

Tyre repair kit

9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

Note: When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.

10. During the inflation, switch the compressor off briefly, to check the tyre pressure using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

Note: It should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after a maximum of 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.

11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the ignition may be turned off after the compressor has been turned off.
12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
13. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve, by unscrewing it as quickly as possible in a counter clockwise direction.
14. Replace the inflation hose protective cap and the tyre valve cap.
15. Make sure the tyre repair kit (including the bottle and receiver caps) is placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after a maximum of 10 km (6 miles), so make sure it is easily accessible.
16. Immediately drive the vehicle for a maximum of 10 km (6 miles). This will allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR



When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution and reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.



Consult a tyre repair centre or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for advice concerning the renewal of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for a maximum of 10 km (6 miles) then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Remove the repair kit from the vehicle.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa) adjust the pressure to the correct value.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (O) position and insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket.
Switch on the ignition. Alternatively, if the vehicle is not in a confined space the engine can be started.
7. Switch the compressor to on (I) and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See 257, WHEEL AND TYRE SIZES.

Tyre repair kit

8. To check the tyre pressure, turn off the compressor and then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.
 - The use of the tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the tyre repair kit pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.
11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, renew the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
12. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is placed securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Make sure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver and the sealant bottle must be renewed once a new tyre has been fitted.











Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

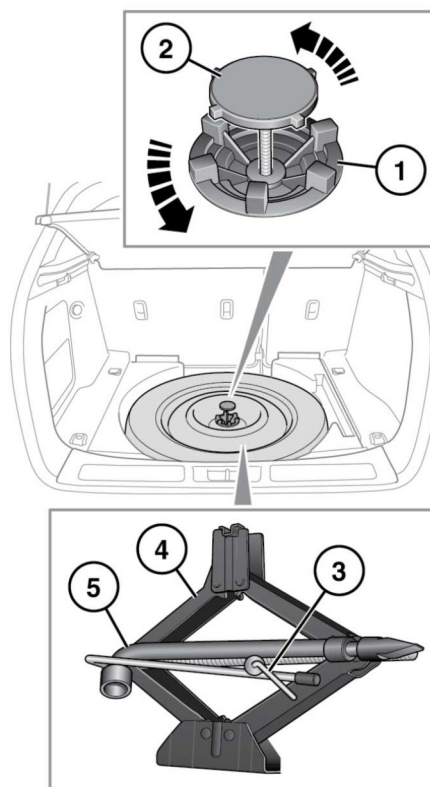
Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure you read and comply with the following warnings.


-  Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.
-  Make sure the vehicle is on firm level ground.
-  Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles, select first or reverse gear on manual vehicles.
-  Switch on the hazard warning lamps.
-  Make sure the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.
-  Disconnect a trailer/caravan from the vehicle.
-  Make sure all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.
-  Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.

TOOL KIT



E156391





1. Temporary spare wheel locking ring.
2. Temporary spare wheel retaining bolt.
3. Tool kit retaining bolt.
4. Jack.
5. Wheel brace.

 After use, the tools and jack should be returned to the storage area and correctly stowed.




Note: Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.




Wheel changing

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

-  Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.
 -  The spare wheel is heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.
 -  Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the retaining bolt.
 -  Do not use power tools to loosen the spare wheel. Doing so may damage the mechanism.
1. To access the temporary spare wheel, fold forward the rear edge of the cover then remove it.
 2. Turn the temporary spare wheel locking ring counter-clockwise to gain access to the retaining bolt.
 3. Turn the retaining bolt counter-clockwise until it comes free.
 4. Remove the temporary spare wheel.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE




-  Adhere to the instructions on the temporary spare wheel warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.
-  Where fitted, the temporary spare wheel is **FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY**. Drive with caution while the temporary spare wheel is fitted. Make sure an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.
-  Do not fit more than one temporary use spare wheel on the vehicle at any one time.

-  The temporary use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60 psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.
-  Temporary use spare wheel, maximum speed is 80 km/h (50 mph).
-  DSC must be switched on while the temporary spare wheel is in use.
-  Traction devices such as snow chains cannot be used with a temporary spare wheel.

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Note: Wheel chocks are not supplied as part of the tool kit.

Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle tool kit. Note the following advice when using wheel chocks.

-  Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.
-  Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
-  If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Locking wheel nuts can be removed only by using the special adaptor provided in the tool kit.

Note: When the vehicle is first supplied, the adaptor may be stored in the glove compartment. It should be removed and stored in the tool kit as soon as possible.

Wheel changing






Note: A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adaptor. If a replacement adaptor is required, you will be asked to quote this number. Make sure the number is recorded and kept safe, but should not be kept with the vehicle.

1. Insert the wheel nut adaptor into the locking wheel nut, making sure it is fully engaged.
2. Locate the wheel brace over the adaptor and unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

Note: After use store the wheel nut adaptor correctly in the tool kit.

WHEEL CHANGING

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure you read and comply with the following warnings:

-  **Make sure the jack is on firm level ground.**
-  **Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.**
-  **Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in-line with the appropriate jacking point.**
-  **Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.**
-  **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**



Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement, may cause an injury.



Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.



Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

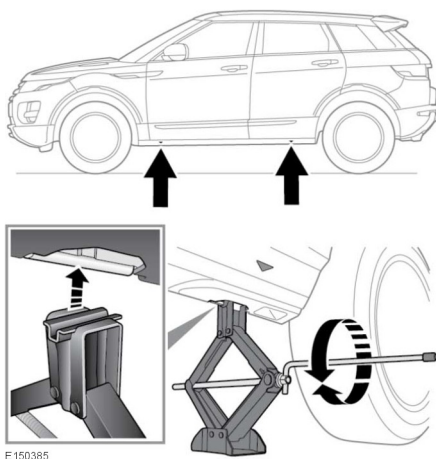


Jack up the vehicle using only the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Note: Your vehicle may be fitted with a tilt sensor which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See **16, TILT SENSOR**.

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts half a turn counter-clockwise.

Wheel changing



1. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point.

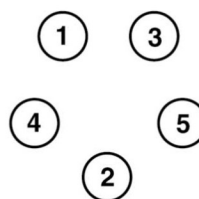
Note: Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point as damage may result.

Note: The Sports pack sills include arrows to identify jacking points.

2. Unfold the cranking handle from its stowed position on the jack. Fit the wheel nut brace to the end of the cranking lever.
3. Rotate the handle clockwise to raise until the jack pin locates into the jacking point.
4. Continue raising the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
6. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
7. Fit the temporary spare wheel to the hub.
8. Re-fit the wheel nuts and lightly tighten them. Make sure the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.

9. Make sure the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions and lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.

10. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see the illustration below) to the correct torque of 133 Nm (98 lb.ft).



Note: If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is renewed, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

Vehicle recovery

RECOVERY METHOD

The method for recovery/transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

⚠ Make sure that vehicle recovery/transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel and the vehicle is secured correctly.

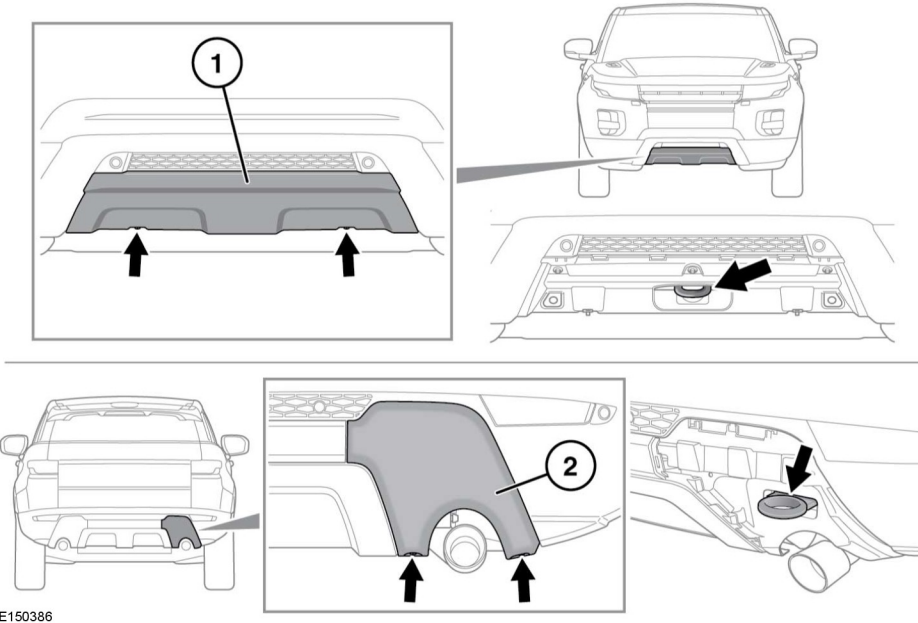
⚠ The recovery agent must activate the Service park release before recovery commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the Service park release can result in serious transmission damage.

⚠ This vehicle should not be towed on all 4 wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

TOWING POINTS

⚠ The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

⚠ Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.



E150386

Vehicle recovery

The towing eyes are located behind panels in the bumpers. Panel design will vary depending on the vehicle specification.

To access the towing points:

1. Front bumper: rotate the 2 fasteners 90 degrees counter clockwise. Pull the panel away from the front bumper.
2. Rear bumper: rotate the 2 fasteners 90 degrees counter clockwise. Pull the panel away from the rear bumper.

Note: *If the Dynamic pack is fitted, the exhaust finisher will also require removal before the towing eye can be used.*

Fitment of the panels is the reverse of removal.



Remove the towing eye covers before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.



Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY



If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at
www.landroverexperience.com.

After a collision

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision it should be checked by a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified persons, before starting or driving.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

To access this information special equipment must be connected directly to the recording modules. Land Rover do not access EDR information without obtaining consent unless pursuant to a court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Land Rover.

Note: *No personal data (e.g., name, gender, age and crash location) are recorded.*

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle such as engine, throttle, steering or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Land Rover and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle.

Vehicle labels

LABEL LOCATIONS

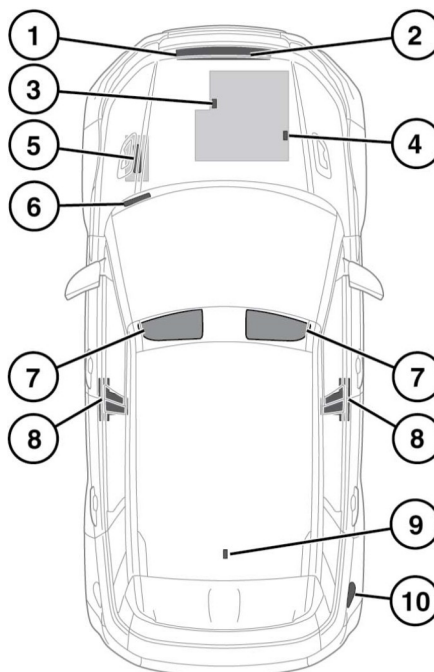


Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is turned on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



E 155568

1. Air conditioning label: Located on the bonnet locking platform.
2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN): Located on the bonnet locking platform.
3. Engine identification information: Stamped into the engine mounting flange.
4. Engine information label: Located on the top right side of the engine cover.
5. Battery warning symbols: Located on the top of the battery.
6. The VIN is stamped on a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the front windscreen.
The VIN is also stamped into the right side suspension tower.

Vehicle labels

The VIN can also be shown in the Message centre via the **Vehicle Info** and **VIN Display** Information panel menus. See **40, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *If you need to communicate with a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*

The vehicle's built date is shown on the VIN plate.

Note: *The vehicle built date is the calendar month and year in which the body and power train assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line. The vehicle's built date is shown on the tyre pressure label.*

- 7.** Airbag label and vehicle handling label:
Located on the Sun visors.
- 8.** Tyre pressure and airbag warning labels:
Located at the base of the right side B pillar (China only).
- 9.** The VIN plate is stamped forward of the spare wheel well.
- 10.** Fuel specification label: Located inside the fuel filler flap.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure the vehicle and its features are used safely.

L

Technical specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Description	Diesel	Petrol
Number of cylinders	4	4
Displacement	2179cc	1999cc
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
Compression ratio	15.8:1	10:1

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Description	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	Diesel with Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C934-B. If unavailable 5W-30 engine oils to ACEA C2 specification may be used
	Diesel without DPF	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C913- C or B. If unavailable 5W-30 engine oils to ACEA A5/B5 specification may be used
	Petrol	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C913-C or B
Gearbox oil	Manual	Castrol BOT350 M3
	Automatic	Shell L12108
Active driveline disconnect hydraulic actuator	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	Pentosin CHF11S
Power transfer unit	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	Castrol BOT448
	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	Castrol BOT720
Haldex coupling	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	STAT OIL SL 12-301
Rear differential oil	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	Castrol BOT448
	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	Castrol BOT720

Technical specifications

Description	Variant	Specification
Brake/Clutch fluid	All vehicles	Use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable for topping up, a Low Viscosity, DOT4 brake fluid that meets the requirements of ISO 4925 class 6 may be used.
Screen wash	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection
Screen cleaning paste	All vehicles	Land Rover screen cleaning paste DNJ500340
Coolant	All vehicles	50% mixture of Texaco XLC antifreeze and water

Land Rover recommends: **Castrol EDGE Professional**



CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity litres (pints)
Fuel tank	Diesel - 2WD	57 (100)
	Diesel - 4WD	60 (105.6)
	Petrol	70 (123.2)
Engine oil refill and filter change	Diesel	5.9 (10.4)
	Petrol	5.6 (9.9)
Gearbox	Manual	1.9 (3.3)
	Automatic	7.0 (12.3)
Active driveline disconnect hydraulic actuator	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	0.5 (0.88)
Power transfer unit	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	0.4 (0.7)
	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	0.45 (0.79)
Haldex coupling	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	0.78 (1.37)
Rear differential	4WD vehicles with Active driveline	0.9 (1.58)
	4WD vehicles without Active driveline	0.63 (1.10)
Washer reservoir	With headlamp powerwash	4.2 (7.4)
	Without headlamp powerwash	3.1 (5.5)

Technical specifications

Item	Variant	Capacity litres (pints)
Cooling system (refill)	Diesel manual with auxiliary heater	5.6 (9.9)
	Diesel manual without auxiliary heater	5.4 (9.5)
	Diesel automatic with auxiliary heater	5.9 (10.4)
	Diesel automatic without auxiliary heater	5.7 (10.0)
	Petrol with auxiliary heater	4.6 (8.1)
	Petrol without auxiliary heater	4.4 (7.7)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All the oil levels must be checked using the level plugs, the Message centre information or the drain and refill procedure, as applicable.

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from kg (lb)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) ¹ kg (lb)	Gross Train Weight (GTW) ² kg (lb)
Diesel manual (2WD)	1595 (3516)	2350 (5180)	3850 (8488)
Petrol	1640 (3615)	2350 (5180)	4150 (9149)
Diesel manual (4WD)	1670 (3681)	2350 (5180)	4150 (9149)
Diesel automatic	1685 (3715)	2350 (5180)	4150 (9149)
¹ The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load.			
² The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer including their respective loads.			

Note: For every 1000m increase above sea level, GTW must be reduced by 10%.

Maximum front axle load ¹ kg (lb)	Maximum rear axle load ¹ kg (lb)	Maximum roof rack load ² kg (lb)	Maximum payload ³ kg (lb)
1300 (2865)	1145 (2525)	75 (165)	500 (1100)
¹ The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.			
² This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.			
³ Options fitted to the vehicle will affect the maximum payload.			

Technical specifications

WHEEL ALIGNMENT DATA

Wheel alignment - front toe	+ 0.22°
Wheel alignment - rear toe	+0.18°
Camber - front	-0.51°
Camber - rear	-1.25°

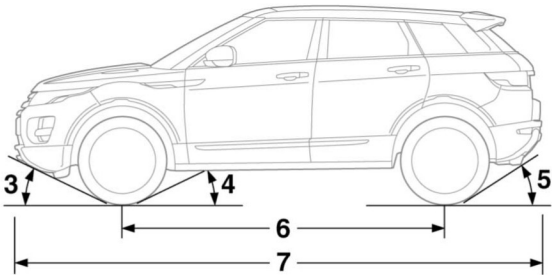
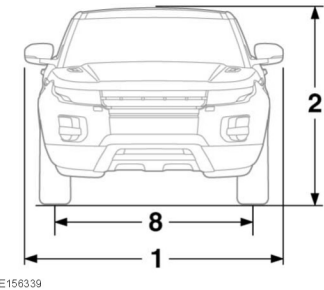
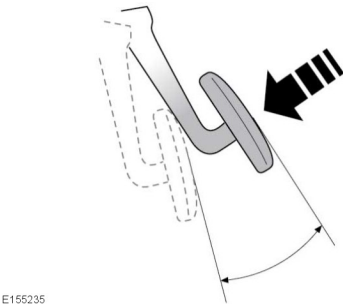
Clutch pedal travel is set at the factory and is non-adjustable.

The brake pedal travel is set at the factory and is non-adjustable. The brake pedal free travel is up to 5mm.

DIMENSIONS

Coupe and 5 Door

CLUTCH AND BRAKE PEDAL TRAVEL



Item	Description	Variant	mm (inches)	Degrees
1	Width (mirrors extended)	Coupe	2085 (82.1)	-
		5 Door	2090 (82.3)	-
	Width (mirrors folded)	Coupe	1980 (78.0)	-
		5 Door	1985 (78.1)	-

L

Technical specifications

Item	Description	Variant	mm (inches)	Degrees
2	Height	Coupe	1605 (63.2)	-
		5 Door	1635 (64.4)	-
	Height with roof rails	Coupe	1610 (63.4)	-
		5 Door	1640 (64.6)	-
	Height with roof rails and cross bars	Coupe	1690 (66.5)	-
		5 Door	1720 (67.7)	-
3	Approach angle	Pure	-	25°
		Dynamic	-	19°
4	Breakover angle	All vehicles	-	22°
5	Departure angle	Pure	-	33°
		Dynamic	-	30°
		With detachable tow ball	-	22°
6	Wheelbase	All vehicles	2660 (104.8)	-
7	Length (excluding number plate plinth)	Pure	4355 (171.5)	-
		Dynamic	4365 (171.9)	-
8	Track - front	All vehicles	1625 (63.9)	-
	Track - rear	All vehicles	1630 (64.1)	-
-	Maximum wading depth	All vehicles	500 (19.7)	-
-	Minimum ground clearance	All vehicles	212 (8.3)	-
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	All vehicles	11300 (445)	-

BULB SPECIFICATION

ⓘ Before attempting to renew a bulb, make sure that both the affected lamp and the vehicle's ignition, are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Note: LED bulbs can be renewed only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watts)
Halogen headlamp (low and high beam)	HB3	60
Xenon headlamp (low and high beam)	D3S	35
Front direction indicators	PS24WSV	24

Technical specifications

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watts)
Front side repeater lamps	W5W	5
Rear direction indicators	PS24WSV	24
Reverse lamps	PS16W	16
Rear fog lamps	PS19W	19

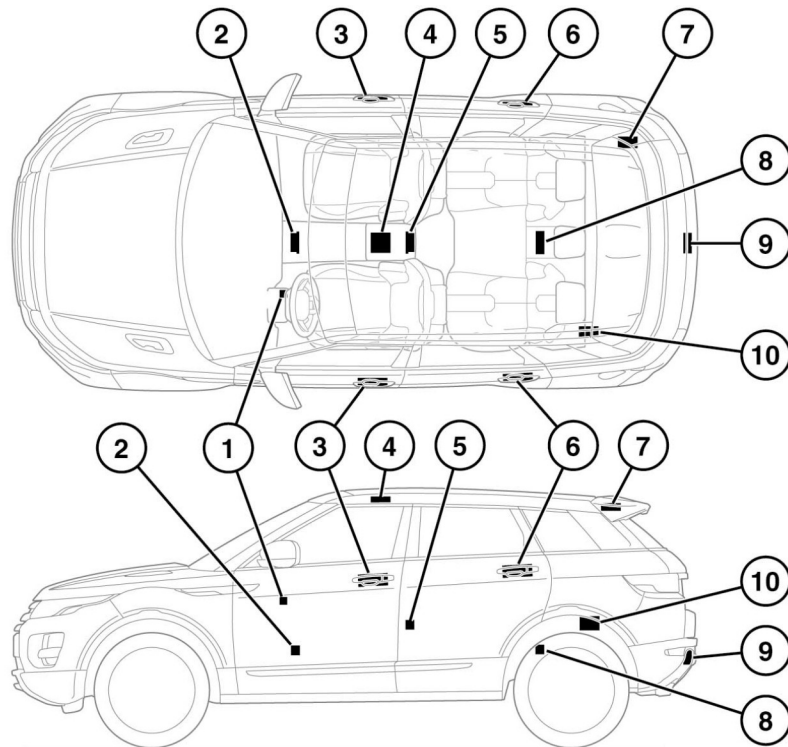
WHEEL AND TYRE SIZES

Wheel size	Tyre size	Speed rating
7.0J x 17	225/65 R17	V
8.0J x 18	235/60 R18	V
8.0J x 19	235/55 R19	V
8.0J x 20	245/45 R20	V
4.0J x 18	155/85 R18*	M

*Temporary use spare wheel and tyre

Technical specifications

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



E150383

1. Steering column backup transmitter.
2. Front cockpit transmitters.
3. Front exterior door handle transmitters.
4. Roof keyless receiver.
5. Floor console front transmitter.
6. Rear exterior door handle transmitters.
7. Loadspace transmitter.
8. Floor console rear transmitter.
9. Tailgate passive entry receiver.
10. Keyless start module.



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

Technical specifications

Transmitter information

Service	Frequency Band	Max. Output	Antenna Position	Specific Conditions
4m VHF	70 - 85 MHz	30 W / CW 40 W / AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2m VHF	142 - 175 MHz	30 W / CW 40 W / AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA	380 - 422 MHz	10 W / CW 10 W / PM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
UHF	450 - 470 MHz	10 W / CW	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Bluetooth	2400 - 2483.5 MHz	10 mW	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	5795 - 5815 MHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	63 - 64 GHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

Type approval



LEAR CORPORATION
ADVANCE RELIABLY

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.



LEAR CORPORATION
ADVANCE RELIABLY

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL
The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.
The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW53-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Type approval

E150390

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
Model Numbers: 5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4288
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers: 5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4288
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

Type approval

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation: 15K601
Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 5E0860127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B-C, AH22-15K601-BC
Description / Intended Use: Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover
Applied Standards: CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
ETSI EN 301 488
IEC EN 60950
ASINZ3 4268
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation
Date: 26 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation: 5E0760127
Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
Description / Intended Use: RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ASINZ3 4268
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation
Date: 27 March 2009

Type approval

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover / 510B60227
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 510B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣： CCAH09LP0550T5

說明：

- 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標識或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，如係販售或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣應符合最低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、耐讀性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反最低功率電波射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 違章廠商應依照違章產品供日檢核對。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人除附同查驗報關圖家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2 節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係指國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用固定式無線電頻型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：REA (Passive Start)
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / 5E0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣： CCAH09LP0570T1

說明：

- 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標識或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，如係販售或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣應符合最低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、耐讀性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反最低功率電波射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 違章廠商應依照違章產品供日檢核對。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人除附同查驗報關圖家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.4 節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係指國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用固定式無線電頻型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150392

Type approval

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣： CCAH09LP056018

說明：

- 請依上列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，如得販賣或公開陳列。
- 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
- 本型式認證證明及符合檢驗標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人除附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係指國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover FOR
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 5E0B90227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣： CCAH09LP055117

說明：

- 請依上列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，如得販賣或公開陳列。
- 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
- 本型式認證證明及符合檢驗標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人除附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係指國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

Type approval

Continental
Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 100 893 - 93000 Regensburg
Kolar Dagnmar
AOL RBS 42
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699
Fax +49 (0)41 790-136699
dagnmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 29, 2008
Your message dated: _____
Our Reference: _____
Your reference: _____

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Product type designation: S180 052 020 A
Intended use: Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1. a: Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1: 2006

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1. b: Applied standard(s): EN 301 489 -1; V1.6.1 (2005-09)
EN 301 489 -3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1; V2.1.1 (2006-04)
EN 300 220 -2; V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

Registered Office:
Continental Automotive GmbH
Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699
Fax +49 (0)41 790-136699
Email: info@continental-corporation.com
Internet: www.continental-corporation.com

Registered Office:
Continental Automotive GmbH
Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6699
Fax +49 (0)41 790-136699
Email: info@continental-corporation.com
Internet: www.continental-corporation.com

Quietek
快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者: Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商: Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱: Jaguar fob
四、廠牌/型號: JAGUAR / SE0B4P217
五、發射功率 (電場強度): 315MHz; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率: 315MHz

七、審驗日期: 98年07月01日
八、審驗合格標識式樣: CCAH09LP0830TI

說明:
1. 請依下列標識式樣自製標識, 標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處, 如得版書或公印標列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機, 其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更, 應呈報申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定, 擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者, 除依電管法規處罰外, 尚應處罰。
4. 違章廠商應自備送審產品供本會抽樣, 並停止其型式認證證明及型式認證標識之使用。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標識應使用標準專用章取得本證明書, 依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第13條規定, 將有人件經由本會轉送中國向登記人於何處辦理登記之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證證明, 應於本證明書之日起30日內, 應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標識及符合性聲明圖樣同意使用圖樣式」送本會備查。

備註:
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 (LP0002 3.4.2節) 之規定。
2. 驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託, 檢發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材使用固定式天線, 應附型號為 Lear Corporation / N/A。

E150394

Type approval

전자문서확인번호
WHSF-31GL-V7SC-VXVD

방송통신기기인증서
Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류
Certification Type

상호 또는 신청
Trade Name or Applicant

기기의 명칭
Equipment Name

기본모델명
Basic Model Number

과제모델명
Series Model Number

인증번호
Certification No

제조사/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin

형식기호
Type Identification

인증연월일
Date of Certification

기타
Others

형식등록(Type Registration)

LEAR CORPORATION

특정소형자동차(하이브리드용을 포함하기)

SE08P127

SE08P0.5E08P40

LER-5E08P127

LEAR Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국

LARN2-KSLA33.92T.0.12E08.000P1D1

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전자연구소장
Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under
the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

전자문서확인번호
NC40-121P-0T4V-URBD

방송통신기기인증서
Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류
Certification Type

상호 또는 신청
Trade Name or Applicant

기기의 명칭
Equipment Name

기본모델명
Basic Model Number

과제모델명
Series Model Number

인증번호
Certification No

제조사/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin

형식기호
Type Identification

인증연월일
Date of Certification

기타
Others

형식등록(Type Registration)

LEAR CORPORATION

특정소형자동차(하이브리드용을 포함하기)

SE08P127

SE08P0.5E08P40

LER-5E08P127

LEAR Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국

LARN2-KSLA33.92T.0.12E08.000P1D1

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)

전자연구소장
Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under
the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

Type approval

전자문서확인번호 7N7K-CFJ1-RW11-SUX

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-LSYK-BE4C-1BRT

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록(Type Registration)

인증의 종류
Certification Type
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name
기본모델명
Basic Model Number
파생모델명
Series Model Number
인증번호
Certification No
제조사/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin
형식기호
Type Identification
인증연월일
Date of Certification
기타
Others

LEAR CORPORATION
비약 전체장도 부속기
5B0770237
5B0770337
LER-5B0770237
Lear Vaux Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
LPD-KSLD.125TAID
2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.
2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
전파연구원
Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 7N7K-CFJ1-RW11-SUX

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-LSYK-BE4C-1BRT

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록(Type Registration)

인증의 종류
Certification Type
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name
기본모델명
Basic Model Number
파생모델명
Series Model Number
인증번호
Certification No
제조사/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin
형식기호
Type Identification
인증연월일
Date of Certification
기타
Others

LEAR CORPORATION
비약 전체장도 부속기
5B0770237
5B0770337
LER-5B0770237
Lear Vaux Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
LPD-KSLD.125TAID
2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.
2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
전파연구원
Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

Type approval



Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address : Simon Vermoeten Road, Silverton
Postcode : 2146
Telephone Number : 012 845 1005
Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005
Registration Number : 200102728807

Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
Model : K08JB5108
Frequency Range : 433 MHz
ITU Emission Code : 12KG1D
Modulation : BPSK
Power Output : +46.7 Dbm @ 3m
Channel Spacing :
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.


Philimon Molele
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P. Molele (Chairperson), Mr. Buys, T.V. Makhahle, R. Nkomo, B.B. Ntshole, P.K. Sileghde, Dr. M.M. Sotlwe, Prof. J.C.W. van Rooyen S.C., M.M. Zake (Councillors), B.K. Motlani (CEO)



Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address : Simon Vermoeten Road, Silverton
Postcode : 2146
Telephone Number : 012 845 1005
Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005
Registration Number : 200102728807

Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
Model : K08JB5108
Frequency Range : 433 MHz
ITU Emission Code : 12KG1D
Modulation : BPSK
Power Output : +37.7 Dbm @ 3m
Channel Spacing :
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.


Philimon Molele
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P. Molele (Chairperson), Mr. Buys, T.V. Makhahle, R. Nkomo, B.B. Ntshole, P.K. Sileghde, Dr. M.M. Sotlwe, Prof. J.C.W. van Rooyen S.C., M.M. Zake (Councillors), B.K. Motlani (CEO)

Type approval



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Postal Form 1001 of 2009 (Section 21.4.6)
Pretoria Reg. 31/0002, Secobar, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby grants a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below:

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
Telephone Number : 012 842 3274
Facsimile Number : 012 842 3274
Registration Number : 200102726907

Description of Apparatus

Category : Key Fob Transmitter
Model : 15K601
Frequency Range : 433.05 MHz
Transmission Code : 15K601
Modulation : ASK-FSK
Power Output : -14.6 dBm
Channel Spacing :
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P Molefe (Chairperson), NA Bityi, TLV Makhubhe, R Muna, DB Nombela, FK Sibanda, DT-IM Sookwa,
P Molefe (Chairperson), NA Bityi, TLV Makhubhe, R Muna, DB Nombela, FK Sibanda, DT-IM Sookwa,
P Molefe (Chairperson), NA Bityi, TLV Makhubhe, R Muna, DB Nombela, FK Sibanda, DT-IM Sookwa,



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Postal Form 1001 of 2009 (Section 21.4.6)
Pretoria Reg. 31/0002, Secobar, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby grants a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below:

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
Telephone Number : 012 842 3274
Facsimile Number : 012 842 3274
Registration Number : 200102726907

Description of Apparatus

Category : Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver
Model : 5E0760127
Frequency Range : 433.05 - 434.79 MHz
Transmission Code : 739K1D
Modulation : ASK-FSK
Power Output :
Channel Spacing :
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P Molefe (Chairperson), NA Bityi, TLV Makhubhe, R Muna, DB Nombela, FK Sibanda, DT-IM Sookwa,

Type approval

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
2501 Yamanashi-cho, Sakai City, Fukuoka 810-1152, Japan
Phone: +81-942-24-4111 Fax: +81-942-24-6003



DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, Alpine Electronics, Inc. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : Bluetooth Module
Model Type Number : IAM 11 BT PWB EU
Directive and Standards used : Radio: EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 200610
EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.3.2: 200504
EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04
ISO7637-2: 2004
Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005
EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006

Year of affixing CE marking : 2009

Signature : S. Aizawa
Name : Shunichi Aizawa
Date : November 12, 2009



Label to be used on the following products only:

- citizen band radio equipment
- cellular equipment
- trunk radio equipment
- spread spectrum devices
- leased channel radio equipment
- cordless telephone
- wireless security devices
- wireless microphone
- radio-control equipment
- medical & biology telemetry equipment

L

272

[illegible]

£150400

Index

- A**
- About this handbook 2
 - Accessories 194
 - Adaptive cruise control 106
 - ACC gap change 107
 - automatic switch-off 108
 - driving hints 109
 - follow mode 107
 - forward alert 111
 - intelligent emergency braking 112
 - malfunction 110
 - queue assist 108
 - radar detection beam issues 110
 - resume follow mode 109
 - resume set speed 109
 - set speed and follow mode override . . 108
 - Adaptive dynamics 92
 - Adaptive front lighting system 50
 - warning lamp 45
 - Adaptive headlamps 50
 - Age degradation (tyres) 234
 - Air conditioning
 - air vents 71
 - front 70
 - remote control batteries 74
 - using the remote control 73
 - Air suspension
 - adaptive dynamics 92
 - Airbags
 - cover cleaning 207
 - curtain 38
 - deployment 36, 38
 - disability modifications 39
 - disabling 37
 - front 38
 - locations 36
 - maintenance 194
 - service information 39
 - side 38
 - warning lamp 39, 45
 - Alarm 193
 - automatic relocking and arming 14
 - battery backed sounder 15
 - interior disabling 15
 - tilt sensor 16
 - Anchor points (ISOFIX) 33
 - Anchor points (luggage) 78
 - Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp 45
 - Anti-theft system 193
 - Anti-trap protection
 - windows 66
 - Arduous driving conditions 192
 - Audio
 - automatic station retune 132
 - CD loading 127
 - CD repeat and shuffle 182
 - changing portable media device 141
 - clock settings 178
 - connecting portable media devices . . . 138
 - DAB radio 133
 - settings 134
 - stations 135
 - dual view 146
 - dual view controls 146
 - DVD player controls 144
 - full screen view 145
 - headphones 147, 150
 - portable media connections 138
 - portable media controls 136
 - portable media pairing 140, 141
 - portable media playing 140
 - radio controls 131
 - rear media touch screen control 148
 - sound settings 126
 - touch screen controls 125
 - TV controls 142
 - video player controls 144
 - Audio controls
 - language selection 179
 - Audio display language 179

Index

- Audio (Standard)
- adaptive volume control 175
 - alternative frequencies 178
 - automatic station retune 177
 - CD track selection 182
 - connecting portable media devices . . . 184
 - controls 174
 - DAB messages 180
 - DAB radio 179
 - DAB radio presets 179
 - DAB service list 180
 - display language 179
 - loading a CD 182
 - MP3 files playing 182
 - news information 178
 - portable media connections 183
 - portable media controls 181
 - radio controls 176
 - radio preset buttons 177
 - radio station autostore 176
 - radio station lock 177
 - servicelink 180
 - tone 175
 - traffic announcement volume 178
 - traffic information 178
- Auto lamps
- wiper detection 50
- Auto zoom (navigation) 162
- Automatic locking 11, 14
- Automatic switch off of ACC 108
- Automatic transmission 87
- drive selector fails to elevate 89
 - fault 89
 - gear selector 89
 - gear shift warning lamp 46
- Autostore
- storing radio stations 176
 - using a stored radio station 176
- Auxiliary device connection 140
- Auxiliary heater 72
- Auxiliary power sockets 76
- B**
- Battery
- boost starting 217
 - care 215
 - charging 218
 - connecting jump leads 216
 - effects of disconnection 218
 - monitoring system 218
 - replacing 218
 - using a starting aid 217
 - warning lamp 44
- Battery backed sounder 15
- Blind spot monitor
- closing vehicle sensing 60
 - displayed messages 61
 - notification of overtaking vehicle 59
 - sensor blockage 61
- Bluetooth
- answering a call 186
 - compatibility 155, 184
 - dialling 186
 - ending a call 186
 - making calls 186
 - pairing
 - via the phone 155
 - portable media
 - pairing 140, 141
 - playing 140
 - rejecting a call 186
 - safety 184
 - telephone 154, 185
 - icons 157
 - overview 154
 - pairing 156, 185
 - phonebook 158
 - safety 155
- Bonnet
- closing 195
 - opening 195
- Boost starting 217
- Booster seats for larger children 33
- Brake temperature 117

Index

Brakes	
ABS warning lamp	45
brake pads	192
control with ABS	93
electronic brake force distribution	93
emergency assist	111
emergency brake assist	93
fluid	
specification	213
top up	213
fluid level	212
handbrake	94
important information	93
parking brake warning lamp	44
steep slope control	93
warning lamp	43, 44
Bulbs	
changing a bulb	197
direction indicator	201, 202
rear fog lamp	202
reversing lamp	202
specification	256
C	
Call volume	157
Cameras	
hitch assist	80
proximity view	123
rear camera	97, 100
reverse traffic detection	99
touch screen menu	123
tow assist	123
Capacities	253
Carpets and mats	207
CD loading	182
CD player	
CD loading	127
portable media pairing	140, 141
portable media playing	140
CD player (Standard)	
adaptive volume control	175
connecting portable media devices	184
controls	174
loading	182
MP3 file playing	182
repeat and shuffle	182
tone	175
track selection	182
CD playing	
MP3 file playback	182
CD repeat and shuffle	182
CD track selection	182
Change a connected phone	156
Changing a bulb	197
Changing a fuse	221
Changing a wheel	
locking wheel nuts	244
recommended process	245
safety warnings	243
spare wheel	244
temporary spare wheel	244
tool kit	243
Charging the vehicle battery	218
Chassis number	250
Child safety	
booster seats	33
check list	33
child seats	30
ISOFIX anchor points	33
ISOFIX installation	34
larger children	33
lock and window inhibitor	30
positioning	31
recommended child seats	33
tether anchor points	34
tether straps	35

Index

Cleaning	
after off-road driving	205
airbag covers	207
alloy wheels	206
carpets and mats	207
exterior	205
glass	206
interior	206
leather	206
paintwork with white spirit	205
park assist sensors	205
parking aids sensors	205
parking sensors	97
rear screen	206
seat belts	207
sensors	205
under body	205
washer jets	208
Climate control	
air vents	71
front	70
fuel burning heater	72
heated and cooled seats	72
heated seats	71
remote control batteries	74
timed climate	73
timed climate remote controls	74
using the remote control	73
Climate seats	72
Clock	40
Clock settings	
standard audio	178
Closing the bonnet	195
Closing vehicle sensing	60
Clutch	
fluid level	212
Clutch and brakes	
adjustment	255
Cold weather driving	
diesel particulate filter (DPF)	193
Compact disc	127
Condensation (headlamps)	50
Conformity declarations	173, 260
Connecting jump leads	216
Controls	
Standard audio system	174
Coolant	
checking the level	211
specification	211
top up	211
Courtesy delay	49
Covers	
refitting	196
removal	196
Critical warning messages	43
Cruise control	105
ACC driving hints	109
ACC emergency braking	112
ACC follow mode	107
ACC gap change	107
ACC radar detection beam issues	110
ACC set speed and follow mode override	108
adaptive cruise control	106
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	110
follow mode	107
forward alert in ACC	111
resume ACC follow mode	109
resume ACC set speed	109
using ACC	106
warning lamp	46
Curtain airbags	38
D	
DAB radio	133
displayed messages	180
ensemble seek	179
ensembles	135, 179
manual tuning	180
settings	134
standard audio	179
standard radio presets	179
DAB service list	180
Data recording	249
Daytime running lamps	48

Index

Dealer locations	166
Declarations of conformity	260
navigation system	173
Deselecting valet mode	69
Destination entry	163
postcode	165
search area	162
Detachable tow ball	80
Detection beam issues	110
Dialling a number	186
Diesel	
filler flap	189
emergency release	188
fuel	188
glow plugs	
warning lamp	45
misfuel device	189
specification	190
sulphur content	188
Diesel particulate filter (DPF)	193
cold weather driving	193
driving short distances	193
sulphur content	188
Dimensions	255
Direction indicators	48
warning lamp	46
Door mirrors	57
blind spot monitor	59
closing vehicle sensing	60
sensors	61
Door transceiver	
assistance	64
erase all programming	63
garage door opener	62
programming	62
programming a single button	63
programming the garage door opener	62
rolling code device programming	63
Double locking	13
Drive away locking	11
Drive selector	
malfunction	89
Drive selector fails to elevate	89

Index

Driving	
ACC automatic switch-off	108
ACC driving hints	109
ACC emergency braking	112
ACC follow mode	107
ACC forward alert	111
ACC gap change	107
ACC malfunction	110
ACC queue assist	108
ACC radar detection beam issues	110
ACC set speed and follow mode override	108
activating intelligent stop/start	85
Adaptive cruise control	106
after a collision	249
aids	
lane departure warning	121
traffic sign recognition	120
arduous conditions	192
before starting	249
blind spot monitor	59
closing vehicle sensing	60
blind spot monitor messages	61
brake control with ABS	93
brakes important information	93
daily checks	192
deactivating intelligent stop/start	85
DSC active warning lamp	44
dynamic mode	90
electronic brake force distribution	93
emergency brake assist	93
forward alert	111
forward alert warning lamp	46
gear shift warning lamp	46
low oil pressure	43
park assist	
park out	103
park assist limitations	103
park assist troubleshooting	104
rain sensor	54
resume ACC follow mode	109
resume ACC set speed	109
selecting park assist	101
sitting correctly	19
steep slope control with ABS	93
using ACC	106
using cruise control	105
weekly checks	192
Driving abroad	
beam pattern	50
headlamps	50
Driving position memory	19
Driving short distances	
diesel particulate filter (DPF)	193
Dual view	146
controls	146
Dynamic mode	90
Dynamic stability control (DSC)	
DSC active warning lamp	44
DSC off warning lamp	45
switching off	90
switching on	90
E	
Easy route	164
Eco-data controls	86
Effects of battery disconnection	218
Electric parking brake	94
Electric seats	18
position memory	19
rear seat access	20
restricted seat travel	18
Electric windows	
operation	65
Electronic brake force distribution	93
Electronic data	249
Electronic traction control (ETC)	91
Emergency brake assist	93, 111
Emergency (navigation)	165

Index

Engine	
antifreeze level	211
compartment opening	195
coolant level	211
diesel fuel	188
diesel particulate filter (DPF)	193
engine compartment	
poisonous fluids	195
oil level	209
petrol fuels	187
specifications	252
starting	
keyless start backup	84
switching off	83
Engine compartment	
fluid filler locations	209
Engine covers	
refitting	196
removal	196
Engine starting	83
Engine/transmission warning lamp	44
Entering a destination	163
Entering the vehicle	
entry and exit mode	20
global opening	7
keyless entry	8
unlocking mode	7
unlocking the steering column	25
Ethanol	187
EU conformity (navigation system)	173
Event data recording	249
Exhaust emissions	197
Exiting the vehicle	
arming the alarm	13
closing mislock	14
door locks and release levers	16
double locking	13
global closing	14
interior locks	16
keyless locking	15
lock confirmation	14
single locking	13
Exterior cleaning	205
Exterior lamps	
bulb changing	197
bulb specification	256
Exterior mirrors	
electric	57
heated	58
manual	57
mirror dip when reversing	58
External temperature	
warning lamp	45
Extra features	69
F	
Favourite locations	
navigation	164
navigation details	165
Flat spots	234
Fluids	
brake	
check	212
specification	213
top up	213
capacities	253
clutch check	212
coolant	
specification	211
top up	211
engine oil check	209
filler locations	209
oil	
top up	210
specifications	252
washer fluid	214
check	213
specification	214
Fog lamps	
warning lamps	
front	46
rear	45
Follow	
override	108

Index

Follow mode		
entering	107	
gap change	107	
gap changing	107	
override	109	
resume	109	
Forward alert	111	
Forward alert in ACC		
object detection	111	
Forward alert warning lamp	46	
Front airbags	38	
Front climate control	70	
Front parking aids	96	
system fault	97	
Front wipers	53	
winter park position	203	
Fuel and refuelling	189	
consumption	190	
diesel	188	
diesel fuel sulphur content	188	
ethanol	187	
filler flap	189	
fuel specification	190	
methanol	187	
Methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE)	187	
misfuel device	189	
octane rating	187	
petrol	187	
reformulated gasoline	188	
running out	188	
safety precautions	187	
tank capacity	190	
Fuel burning heater	72	
Fuel consumption	190	
combined cycles	191	
extra-urban cycle	190	
urban cycle	190	
Fuel gauge	40	
Fuel system	197	
Full screen view for video	145	
Fuses		
changing	221	
engine compartment fuse box	221	
locations	220	
luggage compartment fuse box	226	
passenger compartment fuse box	223	
G		
Garage door opener	62	
assistance	64	
entry gate	64	
erase all programming	63	
programming	62	
programming a rolling code device	63	
programming a single button	63	
Gearbox		
automatic	87	
drive selector fails to elevate	89	
fault	89	
gear shift warning lamp	46	
manual	89	
General program	113	
Glass cleaning	206	
Global closing	14	
Global opening	7	
Glow plugs		
warning lamp	45	
Gradient release control		
ascent brake release	117	
Grass/gravel/snow	113	
H		
Handbook symbols	2	
Handbrake	94	
Hands free parking	102	
park assist limitations	103	
park assist troubleshooting	104	
selecting park assist	101	
Hands free phone	185	
Head restraints		
front seats	23	
rear seats	23	

Index

Headlamps	48	Homelink	62
adaptive	50	assistance	64
beam pattern	50	erase all programming	63
bulb changing	197	gate/door opener	64
bulb specification	256	programming	62
condensation	50	programming a single button	63
courtesy delay	49	programming the garage door opener	62
daytime running lamps	48	rolling code device programming	63
driving abroad	50		
high beam assist	49	I	
high beam assist warning lamp	47	Ignition	
high beam warning lamp	47	rolling re-start	83
levelling	50	switching on	83
removal	199	Indicators warning lamp	46
warning lamp (AFS)	45	Information messages	43
washers	55		
xenon	198		
Headphones	147		
Heated exterior mirrors	58		
Heated seats	71		
Heated steering wheel	25		
Heating and ventilation	70		
air vents	71		
front	70		
fuel burning heater	72		
heated and cooled seats	72		
heated seats	71		
remote control batteries	74		
timed climate	73		
timed climate remote controls	74		
using the remote control	73		
High beam assist	49		
Hill descent control	115		
brake release control	117		
brake temperature	117		
warning lamp	46		
Hitch assist			
cameras	80		
Home (navigation)	165		

Index

Infotainment		Infotainment (Standard)	
automatic station retune	132	adaptive volume control	175
CD loading	127	alternative frequencies	178
DAB radio	133	automatic station retune	177
settings	134	CD repeat and shuffle	182
stations	135	CD track selection	182
dual view	146	clock settings	178
controls	146	connecting portable media devices	184
full screen view	145	controls	174
headphones	147, 150	DAB messages	180
media player controls	144	DAB radio	179
portable media		DAB radio ensemble seek	179
changing	141	DAB radio manual tuning	180
connecting devices	138	DAB radio presets	179
connecting multiple devices	140	DAB service list	180
connections	138	display language	179
controls	136	loading a CD	182
pairing	140, 141	MP3 files playing	182
playing	140	news information	178
radio controls	131	portable media connections	183
rear media touch screen control	148	radio controls	176
rear media use	150	radio preset buttons	177
sound settings	126	radio station autostore	176
touch screen		radio station lock	177
audio/video controls	125	servicelink	180
care	68	tone	175
extra features	69	traffic announcement volume	178
home menu	67	traffic information	178
operating	67	Instrument panel	40, 207
settings	68	display units	42
setup	68	fuel range	42
TV controls	142	lamp test	43
		menu	40
		driving features	40
		instrument display	40
		trip computer	40
		vehicle set-up	40
		warning lamps	43
		warning messages	41
		Intelligent stop/start	
		activating	85
		deactivating	85
		Intelligent stop/start warning lamp	47

Index

Interior cleaning	206	Load carriers	
airbag covers	207	roof mounted	77
carpets and mats	207	Load carrying	
Interior lamps	51	securing a load	77
ambient lighting	52	Load securing	78
bulb changing	197	Locking	
bulb specification	256	automatic relocking	14
intensity	52	confirmation	14
types	51	door locks and release levers	16
Interior locking	16	double locking	13
Interior protection		drive away	11
temporary disabling	15	global closing	14
ISOFIX anchor points	33	keyless	15
ISOFIX installation	34	mislock	14
		single	13
J		single locking	13
Jump starting		transmitter effects on medical devices ..	8
connecting a starting aid	217	Locking wheel nuts	244
connecting jump leads	216	Low fuel warning lamp	45
		Low oil pressure warning lamp	43
K		Lubricants specifications	252
Key transmitters	8	Luggage	
Keyless entry	8	loadspace area	77
Keyless locking	15	Luggage compartment	
		anchor points	78
L			
Label locations	250		
Lamps	48		
auto lamps wiper detection	50		
bulb changing	197		
bulb specification	256		
condensation	50		
test	43		
TPMS warning lamp	46		
warning lamps	43		
xenon headlamps	198		
Lane departure warning	121		
Leather cleaning	206		
Lighting			
ambient lighting	52		
interior lamps intensity	52		
interior lamps locations	51		

Index

M

Maintenance

after off-road driving	205
arduous driving conditions	192
brake fluid level	212
brake pads	192
bulb changing	197
bulb specification	256
capacities	253
changing a fuse	221
checking tyre pressure after a repair ..	241
cleaning	
alloy wheels	206
exterior	205
glass	206
interior	206
leather	206
parking sensors	97
rear screen	206
seat belts	207
sensors	205
under body	205
closing the bonnet	195
clutch fluid level	212
daily checks	192
diesel particulate filter (DPF)	193
engine compartment fuse box	221
engine coolant level	211
engine oil level	209
fuel system	197
fuse box (passenger compartment) ...	223
jump starting	217
label locations	250
lubricants and fluid specifications ...	252
luggage compartment fuse box	226
oil top up	210
paintwork repair	208
smart key battery	11
tyre repair kit	239
tyre repair procedure	240
using a starting aid	217
washer fluid level	213
weekly checks	192

Making a call	186
Manual seats	17
Map	165
auto zoom	162
split screen	161
Message centre display units	42
Methanol	187
Minor paintwork repairs	208
Mirrors	
automatic heaters	58
blind spot monitor	59
closing vehicle sensing	60
sensors	61
dip when reversing	58
exterior mirrors	57
Misfuel device	189
Motorway entry/exit	
route setting	166
MP3 files	182
repeat and shuffle	183
Mpg	190
Mud ruts	114

Index

N

Navigation

Arabic language	167
automatic route learning	164
avoid points	163
destination entry	163
search area	162
destination entry by postcode	165
easy route	164
emergency contacts	165
favourite locations	164, 165
home location	165
legals	171, 172, 173
map	165
auto zoom	162
split screen	161
menu	160
motorway entry/exit selection	166
off-road	
new route	169
route options	170
routes	169
selecting compass view	171
using a stored route	170
operating	159
overview	159
points of interest (POI)	166
categories/sub-categories	166
search	167
previous destinations	166
quick POI selection	164
restore defaults	164
screen modes	162
Start guidance	163
TMC	167, 169
icons	168
voice commands	153
voice guidance	164
News information	
standard audio RDS	178

O

Occupant safety

child seat tether straps	35
cleaning seat belts	207
recommended child seats	33
seat belt pre-tensioners	27
seat belt reminder warning	28
seat belt safety	27
seat belts warning lamp	44
using seat belts	26
Octane rating	187
petrol	187
Off-road driving	
cleaning after	205
dynamic program	114
general program	113
grass/gravel/snow	113
mud ruts	114
navigation	169
new route	169
route options	170
selecting compass view	171
using a stored route	170
override options	114
recovery	248
sand program	114
Oil	
engine oil specification	210
filler locations	209
poisonous fluids	195
specification	252
top up	210
used engine oil	195
Opening the bonnet	195
Owner maintenance	192

P

Paintwork

repair	208
Pairing	
via the phone	155
Pairing a phone	156, 185

Index

Panoramic roof blind		
operation	65	
Park assist		
cleaning sensors	205	
limitations of use	103	
park out	103	
selecting	101	
troubleshooting	104	
Parking aids		
cleaning sensors	205	
operating	96	
rear camera	97, 100	
reverse traffic detection	99	
sensor cleaning	97	
system fault	97	
Parking brake	94	
warning lamp	44	
Parts	194	
Passenger compartment fuse box	223	
Petrol		
fuel types	187	
specification	190	
Petrol consumption	190	
Petrol filler flap	189	
emergency release	188	
Phone	185	
answering a call	186	
Bluetooth compatibility	155, 184	
call volume	157	
change the phone	156	
dialling	186	
ending a call	186	
hands free operation	185	
icons	157	
making calls	186	
overview	154	
pairing to the system	185	
pairing via the phone	155	
pairing via the touch screen	156	
phonebook	158	
rejecting a call	186	
safety	155, 184	
steering wheel controls	157	
Points of interest (POI)	166	
my POI	166	
search	167	
Portable media		
changing device	141	
connecting a device	183	
connecting devices	138, 184	
connecting multiple devices	140	
connection via AUX socket	183	
connection via USB/iPod socket	183	
connections	138	
controls	136, 181	
MP3 file playing	182	
MP3 files repeat and shuffle	183	
pairing	140, 141	
playing	140	
Portable media controls		
standard audio	174	
Postcode		
destination entry	165	
Power sockets	76	
Powered tailgate	10	
opening height	11	
Preset buttons		
storing a radio station	177	
Pressure checking (tyres)		
checking after a repair	241	
Pressures		
tyres	231	
Previous destination	166	
Programming the timed climate	73	
Puncture repair kit	239	
instructions for use	239	
repair procedure	240	
safety	239	
Q		
Queue assist (ACC)	108	
Quick POI selection	164	

Index

R

Radio

automatic station retune	132
controls	131
DAB	133
settings	134
stations	135

Radio data system auto retune	132
-------------------------------------	-----

Radio data system (RDS)

auto retune	177
-------------------	-----

Radio (Standard)

adaptive volume control	175
alternative frequencies	178
automatic station retune	177
controls	174, 176
DAB ensemble seek	179
DAB messages	180
DAB radio manual tuning	180
DAB radio presets	179
DAB service list	180
news information	178
preset buttons	177
station autostore	176
station lock	177
tone	175
traffic announcement volume	178
traffic information	178

Rain sensor	54
-------------------	----

RDS

news information	178
TMC	169
icons	168
overview	167
traffic information	178

Rear camera

hitch assist	80
parking aids	97
reverse traffic detection	99
sensors	100

Rear fog lamps warning lamp	45
-----------------------------------	----

Rear media

headphones	147, 150
remote control batteries	151
remote control use	149, 150
touch screen control	148

Rear screen cleaning	206
----------------------------	-----

Rear seats

folding and raising	22
---------------------------	----

Recording

event data	249
service data	249

Recovery

off-road	248
towing points	247
transporting	247

Reformulated gasoline	188
-----------------------------	-----

Refuelling

diesel	188
diesel fuel sulphur content	188
ethanol	187
methanol	187
MTBE	187
octane rating	187
petrol	187
reformulated gasoline	188
running out of fuel	188
safety precautions	187

Regional mode	177
---------------------	-----

Reminder (seat belt)	28
----------------------------	----

Remote control

care	12
driving position memory	19
rear media	149, 150
batteries	151
single locking	13
smart key battery	11
system transmitters	258

Removing the spare wheel	244
--------------------------------	-----

Removing the vehicle battery	218
------------------------------------	-----

Repairing paintwork damage	208
----------------------------------	-----

Replacement tyres	233
-------------------------	-----

Resetting the windows	204
-----------------------------	-----

Restarting the engine while moving	83
--	----

Index

Restore navigation default settings	164	Safety in the garage	
Restricted seat travel	18	battery precautions	194
Resume speed and follow mode (ACC) . .	109	electrical components	194
Reverse parking aids	96	engine fans	194
rear camera	100	exhaust gases	194
reverse traffic detection	99	hot components	194
system fault	97	jacking	194
Road sign recognition	120	Sand program	114
Rolling re-start	83		
Rolling roads	194		
Roof blind			
operation	66		
Roof racks	77		
maximum weight	77		
Rotary gear selector	89		
Route	163		
favourite locations	164		
favourites details	165		
Running out of fuel	188		
 S			
Safety			
child safety locks	30		
cleaning seat belts	207		
fuel and refuelling	187		
seat belt pre-tensioners	27		
seat belt reminder warning	28		
seat belts	27		
seat belts warning lamp	44		
seats for larger children	33		
sitting correctly	19		
tyre care	230		
tyre pressures	231		
used engine oil	195		
using seat belts	26		
using the telephone	155, 184		

Index

Satellite navigation		
Arabic language	167	
automatic route learning	164	
avoid points	163	
cancel guidance	164	
compass view	171	
coordinates entry	165	
dealer locations	166	
destination entry	163	
search area	162	
destination entry by postcode	165	
easy route	164	
emergency contacts	165	
favourite locations	164, 165	
home location	165	
legals	171, 172, 173	
map	165	
auto zoom	162	
split screen	161	
menu	160	
motorway entry/exit selection	166	
off-road		
route entry	169	
route options	170	
routes	169	
operating	159	
overview	159	
points of interest (POI)	166	
categories	166	
search	167	
previous destinations	166	
quick POI selection	164	
restore defaults	164	
screen modes	162	
Start guidance	163	
stored route loading	170	
TMC	167, 169	
icons	168	
voice commands	153	
voice guidance	164	
Screen modes	162	
Screen settings		
screensaver	68	
theme	68	
time out period	68	
volume pop-up	68	
Screen wash		
check	213	
specification	252	
topping up	214	
Search area (navigation)	162	
Seat belts	26, 207	
adjusting	26	
checks	28	
pre-tensioners	27	
reminder warning	28	
safety	27	
warning lamp	44	
Seats		
child restraint check list	33	
child seat positioning	31	
child seat tether straps	35	
child seats	30	
cleaning seat belts	207	
climate	72	
electric front	18	
front head restraints	23	
heated	71	
ISOFIX installation	34	
manual front	17	
position memory	19	
rear head restraints	23	
rear seat access	20	
rear seat folding and raising	22	
recommended child seats	33	
restricted seat travel	18	
seat belts warning lamp	44	
sitting correctly	19	
Securing luggage	77, 78	

Index

Security		
alarm	193	
tilt sensor	16	
automatic relocking and arming	14	
battery backed sounder	15	
closing mislock	14	
lock confirmation	14	
single locking	13	
Selecting valet mode	69	
Sensors		
blockage (BSM)	61	
Servicing		
airbags	39	
data recording	249	
Servicing requirements		
interval indicator	192	
Setting a timed climate program	73	
Settings menu	40	
display units	42	
Side airbags	38	
Side lamps warning lamp	46	
Sign recognition	120	
Sitting correctly	19	
Smart key		
battery changing	11	
care	12	
driving position memory	19	
single locking	13	
transmitters	258	
Snow chains	235	
Sound settings	126	
Spare wheel	244	
using wheel chocks	244	
Specifications		
clutch and brake pedal adjustment	255	
dimensions	255	
engine	252	
ethanol	187	
fluids	252	
fuel	190	
Fuel tank capacity	190	
label locations	250	
lubricants	252	
methanol	187	
MTBE	187	
weight	254	
wheel alignment	255	
wheels and tyres	257	
Speed-dependent wipers	55	
Speedometer	40	
Split screen map	161	
SRS	36	
airbag warning lamp	45	
Stability control		
DSC	90	
switching on	90	
switching off	90	
Start navigation guidance	163	
Starting after a collision	249	
Starting the engine	83	
keyless start backup	84	
Steering column		
lock	8	
vehicle recovery	8	
Steering column lock	25	
Steering wheel		
adjusting	25	
heated	25	
Steering wheel controls		
telephone	157	
Stop/start		
activating	85	
deactivating	85	

Index

Storage compartments	75	Telephone	154, 185
cup holders	75	answering a call	186
front cubby box	75	Bluetooth compatibility	155, 184
rear armrest	75	Bluetooth pairing	185
Storage compartments areas		call volume	157
glove box	75	change the phone	156
Sunroof		compatibility list	155, 184
anti-trap protection	66	dialling	186
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)		ending a call	186
airbag deployment	38	hands free operation	154, 185
airbag locations	36	icons	157
airbag warning lamp	39, 45	making calls	186
airbags maintenance	194	overview	154
curtain airbags	38	pairing	156
front airbags	38	via the phone	155
side airbags	38	phonebook	158
Surround cameras		rejecting a call	186
tow assist	123	safety	155, 184
Surround cameras	123	steering wheel controls	157
touch screen menu	123	Television	
Suspension		controls	142
adaptive dynamics	92	Terrain response	113
Switching off the engine	83	general program	113
Switching on the ignition	83	grass/gravel/snow	113
		mud ruts	114
T		override options	114
Tachometer	40	program selections	113
Tailgate	5	sand program	114
opening and closing	9, 10	system difficulties	114
powered opening height	11	Tether anchor points	34
Technical specifications		Tilt sensor	16
weights	254	Timed climate	73
wheel alignment	255	additional remote controls	74
wheels and tyres	257	programming	73
		remote control batteries	74
		using the remote control	73
		TMC	167
		Tool kit	243

Index

Touch screen	207	Tow ball	
4x4i menu	118	detachable	80
audio/video controls	125	Tow bar	
button feedback	68	mounting points	82
changing portable media device	141	Towing	
clock	68	a trailer	79
connecting multiple portable media devices		checks	
140		breakaway cable	79
connecting portable media devices	138	calculating weight	79
DAB radio	133	essential checks	79
dual view	146	lights	79
dual view controls	146	nose weight limit	79
DVD player controls	144	tow ball	79
eco-data	86	detachable tow ball	80
extra features	69	hitch assist	80
front climate control	70	stability assist	80
fuel burning heater	72	tow ball options	81
fuel economy facts	86	tow bar dimensions	82
heated and cooled seats	72	tow bar mounting points	82
heated seats	71	trailer electrical connections	80
home menu	67	trailer hitch	81
inhibited display	145	trailer sway	80
language selection	68	weights	
operating	67	maximum weights	79
portable media		Towing points	247
controls	136	Traction control	91
portable media connections	138	switching off	90
portable media pairing	140, 141	switching on	90
portable media playing	140	Traffic announcements	
radio controls	131	volume setting	178
screen settings	68	Traffic information	
setup	68	standard audio RDS	178
shortcuts	68	Traffic message channel (TMC)	169
surround cameras	123	Traffic sign recognition	120
system settings	68	Trailer	
telephone		electrical connections	80
pairing	156	sway	80
phonebook	158	tow assist	123
touch screen care	68	weights	
TV controls	142	maximum weights	79
valet mode	69	Trailer direction indicators warning lamp	46
video player controls	144		
volume presets	68		

Index

Transmission		
automatic	87	
drive selector fails to elevate	89	
fault	89	
gear shift warning lamp	46	
manual	89	
Transmitters		
smart key	258	
Transporting the vehicle	247	
Trip computer	41	
average speed	41	
fuel consumption	41	
fuel range	42	
reset	41	
trip distance	42	
TV		
controls	142	
dual view	146	
dual view controls	146	
Tyre pressure checking after a repair	241	
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	237	
full size replacements	238	
tyre care	230	
valves	233	
warning lamp	46	
Tyre repair kit		
checking pressures	241	
repair procedure	240	
safety information	239	
using	239	
Tyres		
age degradation	234	
changing	238	
flat spots	234	
full size replacements	238	
important information	244	
Indian regulations	236	
pressures	231	
repair kit	239	
repair kit use	239	
repair procedure	240	
replacements	233	
snow chains	235	
speed ratings	230	
temporary use spare	238	
TPMS	237	
warning lamp	46	
tyre care	230	
tyre repair safety	239	
tyre wall markings	229	
use of spare tyre	244	
valves	233	
wall markings	229	
winter	234	
U		
Under body cleaning	205	
Under bonnet covers	196	
Unlocking	16	
all doors	5	
driver's door	5	
entry and exit mode	20	
global opening	5, 7	
keyless entry	8	
mode	5	
multi point entry	5, 7	
opening the tailgate	9, 10	
single point entry	5, 7	
steering column	25	
transmitter effects on medical devices	8	
USB devices		
connecting multiple devices	140	

Index

Used engine oil	195	Video media player	
Using adaptive cruise control	106	controls	144
Using cruise control	105	dual view	146
Using the parking aids	96	controls	146
Using the spare tyre		headphones	147
important information	244	full screen view	145
Using wheel chocks	244	headphones	150
		inhibited display	145
V		rear media touch screen control	148
Valet mode	69	rear media use	150
deselecting	69	VIN number	250
Vehicle alarm	193	Voice control	152
Vehicle battery		navigation POI categories	153
battery monitoring system	218	recognising your voice	153
connecting jump leads	216	settings	
effects of disconnection	218	command list	68
removing	218	operating guide	68
replacing	218	preferences	68
warning symbols	215	voice training	68
Vehicle battery care	215	voicetags	68
Vehicle cleaning		training the system	153
after driving off-road	205	tutorial	152
airbag covers	207	voicetags	153
alloy wheels	206	Voice guidance	164
carpets and mats	207	Volume	
interior	206	telephone	157
parking sensors	97		
rear screen	206	W	
under body	205	Wade sensing	
washer jets	208	controls	118
Vehicle data recording	249	Wading depth	
Vehicle recovery		touch screen aid	118
off-road	248		
steering column lock	8		
towing points	247		
transporting the vehicle	247		
Vehicle testing on rolling roads	194		
Vehicle weights	254		

Index

Warning lamps	43, 46	Wheel changing	
ABS	45	important information	244
ACC follow mode	45	locking wheel nuts	244
adaptive front lighting system (AFS)	45	recommended process	245
airbags	39, 45	safety warnings	243
battery charge	44	spare wheel	244
brake	43, 44	temporary spare wheel	244
critical warning message	43	tilt sensor	245
cruise control	46	tool kit	243
diesel glow plugs	45	use of spare tyre	244
DSC active	44	Wheel chocks use	244
engine/transmission	44	Wheels and tyres	
external temperature	45	age degradation	234
forward alert	46	changing a tyre	238
gear shift warning lamp	46	checking the pressures after a repair	241
HDC	46	flat spots	234
headlamp high beam	47	full size replacements	238
high beam assist	47	Indian regulations	236
indicators	46	pressures	231
intelligent stop/start (green)	47	puncture repair	239
lamp test	43	puncture repair safety	239
low fuel	45	repair kit	239
low oil pressure	43	repair kit use	239
parking brake	44	repair procedure	240
rear fog lamps	45	replacements	233
seatbelt	44	snow chains	235
side lights	46	specifications	257
trailer direction indicators	46	temporary use spare	238
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	46	TPMS	237
46		TPMS warning lamp	46
Washer jets	208	tyre care	230
Washers	53	tyre label	250
fluid specification	214	tyre speed ratings	230
fluid top up	214	tyre wall markings	229
headlamps	55	valves	233
Weights	254	wheel alignment	255
		winter tyres	234
		Windows	
		anti-trap protection	66
		operation	65
		reset	204
		Winter park position	203
		Winter tyres	234

L

Index

Wipers and washers 53
drip wipe 55
fluid level 213
rain sensor 54
speed-dependent mode 55
winter park position 55

X

Xenon headlamps 198

Controls overview

DRIVER CONTROLS

For further information on the numbered item, refer to the page number.

1. Roof blind switch. See **65**.
2. Front interior courtesy lamp. See **51**.
3. Front map/reading lamps. See **51**.
4. Breakdown call button.
5. SOS emergency call button.
6. Exterior lamps and Trip computer control. See **48** and **41**.
7. Audio/Video system control. See **125**.
8. Instrument panel and Message centre. See **40**.
9. Instrument panel menu control. See **40**.
10. Wipers and washers control. See **53**.
11. START/STOP button. See **83**.
12. Touch screen display. See **67**.
13. Audio system. See **125**.
14. Hazard warning lamps switch.
15. Heating, ventilation and air conditioning controls. See **70**.
16. Intelligent stop/start button. See **85**.
17. Hill Descent Control (HDC) button. See **115**.
18. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) button. See **90**.
19. Automatic transmission gear selector. See **87**.
20. Terrain Response control. See **113**.
21. Manual transmission gear selector. See **89**.
22. Electric parking brake. See **94**.
23. Audio on/off/volume control. See **125**.
24. Upshift gear paddle. See **87**.
25. Adaptive cruise control buttons. See **106**.
26. Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control buttons. See **105** and **106**.
27. Steering column adjustment lever. See **25**.
28. Horn.
29. Telephone and voice control buttons. See **157**.
30. Headlamp levelling control. See **50**.
31. Interior lamp illumination control. See **52**.
32. Bonnet release lever. See **195**.
33. Lane departure warning button. See **121**.
34. Tailgate release/open button. See **10**.
35. Heated steering wheel button. See **25**.
36. Downshift gear paddle. See **87**.
37. Rear window isolator switch. See **65**.
38. Window switches. See **65**.
39. Mirror adjustment/power-folding control. See **57**.
40. Central locking/unlocking buttons. See **16**.
41. Driving position memory buttons. See **19**.

